







Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

ENGLISH EDITION

OF

A. IVÁNOFF'S

RUSSIAN GRAMMAR.

2 R. Gr
1935 r.
. Eg

Ivanov, Alexander Alexandrovich

(A. IVÁNOFF'S)

RUSSIAN GRAMMAR

(16th EDITION—145th THOUSAND).

TRANSLATED, ENLARGED, AND ARRANGED

FOR THE

USE OF ENGLISH STUDENTS OF THE RUSSIAN
LANGUAGE

BY

WALTER E. GOWAN,

MAJOR IN HER MAJESTY'S INDIAN ARMY.

LONDON:

KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH & CO., 1, PATERNOSTER SQUARE,

1882.

~~2113~~
~~2111/83~~

26419
30/3/93.



LONDON:

PRINTED BY GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, LIMITED,
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE, CLERKENWELL.

THE ENGLISH EDITION OF THIS GRAMMAR
IS, BY GRACIOUS PERMISSION,
MOST RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED
TO
HER ROYAL AND IMPERIAL HIGHNESS
MARIE ALEXANDROVNA,
DUCHESS OF EDINBURGH,
AND
IMPERIAL PRINCESS OF RUSSIA.

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Оглавлѣніе).

| | PAGE |
|--|--------------------|
| PREFACE | vii |
| NOTE ON THE RUSSIAN LANGUAGE | ix |
| RUSSIAN, ENGLISH, AND GREEK ALPHABETS } | <i>face</i> xi |
| CLASSIFICATION OF RUSSIAN LETTERS | |
| RUSSIAN LETTERS AND THEIR SOUNDS | xi—xx |
| PERMUTATION OF RUSSIAN LETTERS | xxi |
| EPENTHESIS, OR INSERTION OF LETTERS | } xxi & xxii |
| PROSTHESIS, OR PREFIXING OF LETTERS | |
| APOCOPE, OR ABRIDGMENT OF VOWELS, &c. | |
| SYNCOPE, OR CONTRACTION OF WORDS BY STRIKING OUT LETTERS | |
| CLASSIFICATION OF RUSSIAN WORDS | xxii |
| RUSSIAN WORDS TRACEABLE TO ROOTS | xxii |
| ROOTS OF REGULAR RUSSIAN VERBS | xxiii |
| INTRODUCTION | 1 |
| FIRST PART:— | |
| ETYMOLOGY | 1—4 |
| THE NOUN SUBSTANTIVE. | 4—26 |
| THE NOUN ADJECTIVE | 26—39 |
| THE NOUN OF NUMBER OR NUMERAL | 39—45 |
| THE PRONOUN | 45—51 |
| THE VERB | 51—78 |
| THE ADVERB | 78—81 |
| THE PREPOSITION | 81, 82 |
| THE CONJUNCTION | 82, 83 |
| THE INTERJECTION | 83 |

Changes which Russian
Letters undergo.

SECOND PART:—

| | |
|--|---------|
| SYNTAX | |
| PROPOSITIONS | |
| THEIR PRINCIPAL PARTS | |
| THEIR SECONDARY PARTS | |
| THE CONSTRUCTION OF A PROPOSITION | 84—90 |
| THE SIGNIFICATION OF A PROPOSITION | |
| THE DIVERSITY OF EXPRESSION IN A PROPOSITION | |
| CONSTRUCTION OF COMPOUND PROPOSITIONS | |
| PERIODICAL AND BROKEN SPEECH | |
| CONCORD OF WORDS | 90—93 |
| GOVERNMENT OF WORDS | 93—101 |
| EMPLOYMENT OF CASES WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS | 94—99 |
| EMPLOYMENT OF CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS | 99—101 |
| DISTRIBUTION OF WORDS | 101—104 |
| MARKS OF PUNCTUATION | 104—108 |

THIRD PART:—

| | |
|---|----------|
| ORTHOGRAPHY | 108 |
| EMPLOYMENT OF CAPITAL LETTERS | 108—110 |
| EMPLOYMENT OF SMALL LETTERS | 110—118 |
| PROPER USE OF SEPARATE WORDS | 118, 119 |
| THE HYPHEN | 119, 120 |
| DISJOINTING OF WORDS | 120 |
| CONTRACTION OF WORDS | 120 |

P R E F A C E.

IN the belief that, amongst the gradually increasing number of English officers who are recognizing the importance of the study of Russian, a demand exists for a *Modern Russian Grammar*, it occurred to me that I might profitably devote some time and labour, during my leave from India, towards endeavouring to provide for this want.

The method of setting about such a task seemed to me to be one of two :—1st. I might either compile, from the few existing works in the Russian and English languages, a guide of the kind required, and thereby produce that which would of necessity be imperfect, and at the same time far from original. 2nd. Or I might take a practical work, by a recognized Russian Grammarian, and try and adapt it to the special requirements of English Students of the Russian Language.

The latter course I have endeavoured to follow, and the scope of the enlargement and arrangement of the Russian Grammar, which I have selected for the purpose, may be thus explained :—

The original text, having been written by a Russian for Russians contains no Alphabet, or explanations of the various sounds of the several letters. Essentials under this and other heads have been supplied in the first twenty pages of the English edition.

Russian words occurring throughout the English text have been

accentuated,¹ so as to ensure, as far as possible, a correct pronunciation.

The final letters or syllables of words, marking the changes to which each is subject either through declension or conjugation, have been printed in a different type, so that the radical letters may stand out more clearly. Prefixes have been similarly dealt with. The principle of reducing every simple and compound word to a root has been thus kept in view.

Mr. Henri Riola, Professor of Russian at the Staff College, has been good enough to help in the revision of the pages of a Grammar which it is hoped will be of use in enabling Englishmen (and especially English officers) to become better acquainted with the language of a great and growing country.

W. E. G.

¹ N.B.—Russian words in this Grammar which begin with capital letters, and which are unaccented, take the accent on the initial letter.

NOTE.

THE Russian language is a dialect of the Slavonian, the common tongue of a large family of nations descended from the Scythians, but whose earlier origin is unascertained. Many of the modern roots are Sanscrit, Greek,¹ Latin, and German. The spoken language incorporated many words from the Polish and other Slavonian dialects, the Tartar and Mongolian. The written character is a very neat one; and the printed has much resemblance to the Greek, some also to the Latin. The Alphabet is as nearly phonetic as can be desired, and has the advantage of expressing complex consonantal sounds. That Russian literature has not yet contributed its full quota to the great hive of human learning should be mainly ascribed to over-government, to its being yet in the youth of its existence, and still in a condition which compels it to borrow much. When civilization shall have taken firm root in all classes, then Russia will no doubt enlarge her pretensions; but the time is coming, and the minds to do the work are ripening.—*Extract from the "Encyclopædia Britannica."*

¹ In the 9th century, two Greek Missionaries were sent into Moravia by the Byzantine Emperor, Michael III., to translate the Bible, and other theological works, into Slavonian. Finding letters unknown to the inhabitants, they composed an Alphabet after the model of the Greek, with a few additional characters, to express the sounds peculiar to the Slavonian language.—*Extract from the Introduction to "Heard's Practical Grammar of the Russian Language."* St. Petersburg, 1827.

RUSSIAN LETTERS AND THEIR SOUNDS.

VOWELS¹ AND SEMI-VOWELS.

| | English letters. | English words. |
|--|------------------|----------------|
| (1) The hard vowel <i>А, а</i> , is represented by | á | are, far. |
| | ǎ | am, fat. |
| | ō | own, alone. |
| | ā | fate. |

The ordinary sound of the Russian *а* is that of *á*: *Ex.* мать, mother, pronounced *mátʹ*.

It has also the sound of *ǎ* when found at the end of certain words and *not accented*: *Ex.* баба, old woman, pronounced *bábǎ*.

In the inflection *ao* of adjectives, if it be *accented*, its sound is that of *ō*: *Ex.* сухáго, gen. of сухóй, dry, pronounced *sookhōvǎ*.

NOTE.—When it is *unaccented*, and follows certain consonants (*ж, ч, ш, щ*), its sound is that of *ā*: *Ex.* жарá, heat; часы́, hours; шалýнъ, a wag; щажý, I spare, from щадýть; pronounced *jārá*, *tchāsoui*, *shālōon*, *shtshājōō*.

| | English letters. | English words. |
|--|------------------|----------------|
| (2) The soft vowel <i>Я, я</i> , is represented by | yá or yǎ | yard, yarrow. |
| | yě | yes. |
| | ā | made. |
| | á | solar. |

When it is *accented*, and in any part of a word or syllable, its sound is that of *yá*: *Ex.* я́ма, ditch; мя́со, meat; запá, dawn: pronounced *yámǎ*, *myásǒ*, *zaryá*.

When *not accented*, and at the end of words, its sound is that of *yǎ*: *Ex.* врéмя, time, pronounced *vrēmýǎ*.

¹ In the pronunciation of Russian vowels it should be noticed whether the word in which they occur is isolated, whether the vowel itself is accented, and whether it begins a syllable.

When *not accented*, and at the beginning of words or syllables, its sound is that of *yě*: *Ex.* ядрó, kernel; дѣвѣть, nine: pronounced *yědrō*, *devyětʹ*.

After a consonant, and *not accented*, it has the sound of *ā*: *Ex.* вѣжý, I tie (from вѣзѣть), pronounced *vājōb*.

The letter я, in the suffix *ся*, of pronominal and other verbs, is pronounced *sa*: *Ex.* старѣтьсѣ, to endeavour; represented thus—*starátsa*.

| | English letter. | English words. |
|--|-----------------|-------------------|
| (3) The hard vowel Ѣ, я, is represented by | e | { enmity, let. |

This letter, and *not e*, is used at the beginning of certain Russian words, and of foreign words in use in the Russian language, and also after a vowel: *Ex.* эй! ho! эхъ! hey! ётотъ, this, &c.; экваторъ, the Equator; поётъ, poet; pronounced *ей*, *ekh*, *etot*, *ekvátor*, poet.

| | English letters. | English words. |
|--|------------------|----------------|
| (4) The soft vowel Е, е, is represented by | yě | yes. |
| | yō | yoke. |
| | yŏ | yonder. |
| | ŏ | sop. |
| | ĩ | sit. |
| | ě | spell. |

At the commencement of words or syllables, and after a vowel, its sound is that of *yě*: *Ex.* едвѣ, scarcely; великое, great (*neut. form* of великій): pronounced *yědvá* and *vělēēkōyě*.

When it is *accented* it takes the sound of *yō* or *yŏ*: *Ex.* ёлка, a fir-tree; твёрдо, firmly; pronounced *yōlkă* and *tvŷŏrdă*.

In such cases in this Grammar it will be found marked with two dots instead of the ordinary accent mark.

When *accented*, and found after the consonants ж, ч, ш, щ and ы, it has the sound of *ŏ*: *Ex.* жёлчь, gall, pronounced *jŏltchʹ*, and marked as above indicated.

After a consonant, when *not accented*, its sound is that of *ĩ*: *Ex.* женá, wife, pronounced *jĩná*.

After a consonant (other than those specified above), when *accented*, its sound is that of *ě*: *Ex.* смёрть, death; сёрдце, heart; pronounced *směrtʹ* and *sěrdtse*.

NOTE.—The vowel *e* is used, instead of *ə*, in the following Russian words:—проѣ́ктъ, project; реѣ́стръ, register; еѣ́съ, sword-hilt; еѣ́рейторъ, a corporal, &c.; which are pronounced proĕkt, reestr, efes, efreitor, &c.

(5) The hard vowel *И*, *и*, has no *exact* equivalent in English. It has a hollow or muffled sound, and its true pronunciation can only be seized by hearing it from the mouth of a Russian.

After the letters *б*, *в*, *м*, *п*, *ф*, its sound resembles the French *oui* pronounced very shortly, or that of the English *we*: *Ex.* грибо́ви (*plur.* of грибо́, a mushroom): *вы*, you; *мы*, we; сно́ви (*plur.* of сно́пъ, a sheaf): pronounced griboui, voui, moui, snăpoui, &c.

After other consonants its sound is that of the English *uee*: *Ex.* сы́нъ, a son, pronounced *sueen*.

NOTE.—This vowel may always be distinguished from *u* by its thicker sound. It occurs in the genitive case singular, and nominative case plural, of substantives ending in *а*, and in the nominative, plural, of those ending in *ѣ*.

| | English letters. | English words. |
|---|------------------|----------------|
| (6) The soft vowel <i>u</i> is represented by the | ĩ | ill. |
| | æ | æra. |
| | ye | |
| | oui | |

Its ordinary sound at the commencement of words and syllables is that of *ĩ*: *Ex.* и́дти, to go; pronounced idteē: and also in the word миръ, peace, pronounced mĩr.

At the commencement of certain cases of the pronoun of the third person it bears the sound of a diphthong: *Ex.* ихъ, of them, theirs, pronounced ækh.

After the semi-vowel *в*, it has the sound of *ye*: *Ex.* ста́тъи (*plur.* of ста́тъя, an article), pronounced statyé.

NOTE 1.—After a preposition ending in *ѣ*, it takes the thicker sound of *и*: *Ex.* предше́дущій, preceding, pronounced predoui-dooshtshĩi, &c. Indeed, some writers substitute the letter *и* for the combined letters *ѣи* shown in the above example.

NOTE 2.—Many writers retain *u* in all words composed of the preposition *при* and a word commencing with a vowel: *Ex.* приобща́тъ, to communicate; приѣ́хатъ, to arrive, &c. But it is more regular to change the *u* into *и*, and to write such words thus: приобща́тъ and приѣ́хатъ, &c.

| | English letter. | English words. |
|--|-----------------|-----------------|
| (7) The soft vowel <i>I, i</i> , is represented by the | ĩ | { pity. ill. |

Its ordinary sound is that of the English *i*: *Ex.* лѣлія, lily, pronounced leēlžyă.

Before a consonant this vowel is only met with in one word in the whole of the Russian language, viz. міръ, universe, pronounced mŭr, and which should not be confounded with the word миръ, peace (see second illustration of the *ordinary* sound of *u*).

NOTE 1.—The vowel *i* is used instead of *u*, of which it is, indeed, a shorter form, before all vowels and before the semi-vowel *ũ*: *Ex.* cié (*neut.* form of ceй, this or that): приучать, to accustom; приятный, agreeable; гѣній, genius, &c.

NOTE 2.—The letters *u* and *i* are exactly similar in sound; the first is used before consonants, and the second before vowels: *Ex.* доли́на, a valley; Іюль, July; мѣ́лыица, a mill; чтѣ́нiе, reading; ви́шнiя, a cherry; насѣ́лiе, violence.

| | English letters. | English words. |
|--|------------------|---------------------|
| (8) The hard vowel <i>O, o</i> , is represented by | { ō ō ă | no. not. was. |

The ordinary sound of this letter is that of the English *ō* or *ō*: *Ex.* до́ма, of a house, or the idiom for “at home;” колоко́ль, a bell: pronounced dōmă and kōlōkōl.

When, however, it occurs in a syllable upon which the accent does *not* fall, its pronunciation is that of the English *ă*: *Ex.* хоро́шō, well, pronounced khăřăřshō.

| | English letters. | English word. |
|--|------------------|---------------|
| (9) The hard vowel <i>J, y</i> , is represented by | oo | moon. |

The sound of this letter resembles that of the English *ōō* or *ōō*: *Ex.* бѣ́ря, tempest; рѣ́бá, creek, bay; pronounced bōōryă and gōōbá.

| | English letters. | English words. |
|---|------------------|----------------|
| (10) The soft vowel <i>Ю, ю</i> , is represented by | { yu u | you. tube. |

At the beginning of words or syllables the sound of this letter is that of the English *yũ*: *Ex.* ю́гъ, south, pronounced yũg.

At the end, or in the middle, of words or syllables, its sound is that of the English *u* : *Ex.* лю́блю, I love, pronounced lūblŭ.

(11) The medium vowel *Ѣ*, *ѣ*, has for the most part the same sounds as the Russian *Е*, *е* (see above, letter No. 4), viz. that of the following English letters : *ѣ* in the word *yes*, and of *yo* or *yeo* in the words *yoke* or *yonder* and *yeoman*, and also that of *ay* in the word *may*.

At the commencement, and sometimes in the middle, of words and syllables, its sound is that of *ye* : *Ex.* ѣ́сть, to eat ; нѣ́тъ, no, not ; pronounced yěst' and nyětt.

When *accented* it has the sound of *yeo* only in the words звѣ́зды (*plur.* of звѣ́здá, a star) ; гнѣ́зда (*plur.* of гнѣ́здó, a nest) ; сѣ́дла (*plur.* of сѣ́длó, a saddle), &c., and their derivatives ; pronounced zvyeōzdwi, gñyeōzdā, syeōdlā. Also цвѣ́тъ, past tense of цвѣ́стѣ, to blossom ; обрѣ́тъ, past tense of обрѣ́стѣ, to acquire ; pronounced tsvyeōl and ābryeōl, &c.

When *accented* and at the end, and sometimes in the middle, of a word or syllable, its sound is that of *ay* : *Ex.* на столѣ́, on the table (from столъ) ; вѣ́ра, faith ; pronounced ná stolāy and vāyřā.

NOTE.—As a general rule, it may be observed that when a primitive word or root is written with *ѣ*, that vowel is retained in all its derivatives.

(12, 13, 14) The semi-vowels *ѣ*, *ѣ*, *ѣ*, have no separate sounds of their own.

Since no Russian word can end with a consonant, the hard or soft semi-vowel, *ѣ* or *ѣ*, forms the termination of such as do not end with a vowel : *Ex.* глаго́лъ, a verb ; вѣ́тъ, a branch, &c.

The hard semi-vowel *ѣ*, though mute, gives to the *consonant* which precedes it a strong and dry sound, as though it were double. It causes, too, a feeble consonant to be articulated like its corresponding strong consonant : *Ex.* станѣ́, stage, station ; вязѣ́, elm ; кровѣ́, roof ; шестѣ́, pole, perch ; братѣ́, brother, &c. ; pronounced stánn, vyass, kroff, shestt, brátt.

In the prefixes, into the composition of which the hard semi-vowel *ѣ* enters, it is only retained before the vowels *е*, *и*, *ѣ*, *ю*, *я* : *Ex.* объеќтивный, objective ; въ́хатъ, to enter ; предше́дшій, preceding ; а́дютáнтъ, aide-de-camp ; объя́вить, to announce, &c.

The soft semi-vowel *ѣ* may be said to be a modified form of *и*. It gives to the *consonant* which precedes it a soft and liquid sound : *Ex.* станѣ́, arise (imp. mood of станові́ться) ; вязѣ́, swamp, band ;

кровѣ, blood; шестѣ, six; брать, to take; pronounced stan¹, vyaz¹, krov¹, shest¹, brât¹, leaving the original sound of the final *u* to melt away in the mouth. In the middle of a word or syllable the same process takes place.

NOTE 1.—The semi-vowel *ь* cannot be placed either after the guttural letters *г, к, х*, or the liquid *л*. It may appear, however, after any of the other consonants, and that, too, in the middle of a word: *Ex.* вѣсѣмá, very; скóлѣко, how much, how many, &c.

NOTE 2.—When the letter *л* occurs before the termination *нѣтъ*, the soft semi-vowel *ь* is inserted: *Ex.* колóтъ, to pierce, колѣнѣтъ; стрѣлѣтъ, to fire, стрѣлѣнѣтъ, &c.

NOTE 3.—The importance of distinguishing between the hard and soft semi-vowels *ъ* and *ь* will be seen by a reference to the following words, the signification of which depends on the pronunciation of the final consonant:—

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| братѣ, brother; | братѣ, to take. |
| вязѣ, an elm; | вязѣ, a bog, band. |
| кладѣ, a treasure; | кладѣ, cargo. |
| кровѣ, a roof; | кровѣ, blood. |
| матѣ, mate (at chess); | матѣ, mother. |
| перстѣ, a finger; | перстѣ, earth. |
| плотѣ, a raft; | плотѣ, flesh. |
| пылѣ, heat; | пылѣ, dust. |
| столѣ, a table; | столѣ, so much. |
| ýголѣ, a corner; | ýголѣ, coal (charcoal). |
| цѣпѣ, a flail; | цѣпѣ, a chain. |
| шестѣ, a pole; | шестѣ, six. |
| щегóлѣ, a goldfinch; | щегóлѣ, a for. |
| &c., &c. | |

The soft semi-vowel *ѣ* is always found after a vowel, and is but a shortened form of *и*. Its pronunciation is very brief, and, in conjunction with the vowel which precedes it, it forms but one syllable: *Ex.* даѣ, give (imp. mood of да́вать); моѣ, my, mine; pronounced dá¹, mó¹, &c.

CONSONANTS.¹

(15) The labial and strong consonant *П, п*, is in sound similar to the English *p*: *Ex.* попѣ, a priest, pronounced pope.

¹ In the pronunciation of Russian consonants, it should be observed whether the following vowel is hard or soft, and whether such vowel terminates the word or syllable.

(16) The ordinary sound of the feeble consonant *B, б*, is that of the English *b*.

It moreover takes the sound of its corresponding strong consonant *π* at the end of words or syllables terminating with the hard semi-vowel *ъ* and before any strong consonant: *Ex.* бобѣ bean; обтира́тъ, to rub round; pronounced *bopp* and *ǎptirátʹ*.

(17) The sound of the labial and strong consonant *ф* is that of the English *f* or *ph*: *Ex.* франтъ, a beau or fop, pronounced *frant*.

(18) The ordinary sound of the labial and feeble consonant *B, в*, is that of the English *v*: *Ex.* вѣра, faith, pronounced *vāyra*.

It, moreover, takes the sound of its corresponding strong consonant *ф* at the end of words or syllables terminating with the hard semi-vowel *ъ* and before any strong consonant: *Ex.* ро́съ, ditch; вшóрникъ, Tuesday; pronounced *roff* and *ftórník*.

(19) The ordinary sound of the guttural and strong consonant *K, к*, is that of the English *k* and of *c* in certain examples.

Moreover, before the feeble consonants *б, д, ж, з*, it takes the sound of its corresponding feeble consonant *z*: *Ex.* къ Бóгу, to God; къ доб́рý, to the good; къ землѣ́, towards the earth; pronounced *gbōhōō*, *gdǎbrōō*, *gzemlāy*, &c.

Before the strong consonants *к, м, н*, it receives the aspirated articulation of *x*: *Ex.* къ кому́? towards whom? кто? who? кѣ́ чемý? towards whom?—pronounced *'komōō*, *'kto*, *'ktchemōō*, &c.

(20) At the beginning, and in the middle, of certain words the guttural and feeble consonant *Г, г*, preserves the sound of the English *g*: *Ex.* гро́мъ, thunder; я́рбъ, coat of arms; я́бну, I will perish; pronounced *grom*, *gerb*, *geēbnōō*.

It has also other sounds. At the end of words and before the consonant *и* it takes the sound of its corresponding strong consonant *к*: *Ex.* мо́гъ, I could (from мочь), pronounced *mōk*.

It is aspirated in the following words: Бóга, of God; Госпо́дъ, Lord; б́лаго, good, well; pronounced *Bóhǎ*, *Hǎspōdʹ*, *bláko*.

In the words Бо́гъ, God, у́богъ (it is) wretched; also before a strong consonant (*к, м, н*, &c.), and in foreign words ending in *иъ*, such as Страсбóуиъ, *Strasbourg*, it takes the aspirated sound of the strong consonant *х*, which may be represented by *kh*. Hence the above words are pronounced *Bokh*, *ōōbokh*, *Strasbourkh*.

In the terminations *ио, юо, ою* and *ею* of adjectives and of

pronouns, its sound is that of the English *v*: *Ех.* краснѣо, of red; синѣо, of blue; одноѣо, of one; всеѣо, of all; pronounced krásnǎvǎ, sēenyǎvǎ, ādnǎvō, vsevō.

In foreign words adopted in the Russian language it is pronounced either as the English *g* or *h*, according to the sound of the letter which it replaces: *Ех.* грація, grace; ѡспиталь, hospital; pronounced grátsiǎ, hospítál¹.

(21) The sound of the guttural and strong consonant *X*, *x*, is that of *kh*:¹ *Ех.* храмъ, temple, church; pronounced *khramm*.

(22) The ordinary sound of the dental and strong consonant *T*, *m*, is that of the English *t*: *Ех.* телеѣра, a cart or waggon, pronounced telǎyga.

Before the feeble consonants *б*, *в*, *д*, *ж*, *з*, this letter takes the sound of its corresponding feeble consonant *ð*: *Ех.* ѡмдалъ, I have surrendered; ѡмзывать, recall; pronounced *ōddal*; *ōdzwiiff*.

In words wherein *cm* is followed by *н*, the letter *m* is not pronounced: *Ех.* пѡстпый, abstinent; частный, private; pronounced pōsnwii, tchásnwii.

(23) The ordinary sound of the dental and feeble consonant *A*, *ð*, is that of the English *d*: *Ех.* домъ, a house, pronounced *dom*.

This letter, moreover, takes the sound of its corresponding strong consonant *m* at the end of words and syllables terminating with the hard semi-vowel *з*, and when found before any strong consonant: *Ех.* садъ, garden; вѣдка, brandy or whiskey; pronounced *sátt*, vōtka.

In words wherein *зд* is followed by *н*, the letter *ð* is not pronounced: *Ех.* пѡздно, late, (*adv.*) прázдникъ, holiday; pronounced pōznǎ, práznik.

(24) The buzzing or hissing and strong consonant *III*, *ш*, resembles in sound the compound English letter *sh*: *Ех.* шкаѣ, cupboard, pronounced *shkaff*.

(25) The ordinary sound of the buzzing or hissing and feeble consonant *Ж*, *ж*, is that of the compound English letter *zh*, or the French *j*: *Ех.* жду, I wait (from ждать); мужъ, husband; лѣжа, butt; pronounced *zhdoo*, moʒj, lōjkǎ.

This letter, however, takes the sound of its corresponding strong

¹ There are no *English* words that properly exemplify the very guttural sound of the Russian *x*, but the sound of *ch* in the *Scotch* word *loch* is very like it.

consonant *u* at the end of words and syllables terminating with the hard semi-vowel *ѣ*, and when found before any strong consonant: *Ех.* нѡжѣ, knife; крѹжка, tankard, jug; pronounced *nōsh*, *kroōs/škă*.

(26) The ordinary sound of the hissing and strong consonant *С, с*, is that of the English *s*: *Ех.* сестра́, sister, pronounced *sestrá*.

Before the feeble consonants *б, в, д, ж, з*, this letter takes the sound of its corresponding feeble consonant *з*: *Ех.* сборъ, collection; сгорѣ́тъ, to burn; сдать́, to surrender; сжимáтъ, to compress; pronounced *zbor*, *zgorātʹ*, *zdátʹ*, *zjímátʹ*.

Before *u* and *u* this letter takes the hissing sound of *u*: *Ех.* сшивáтъ, to sew together; счáстie, prosperity; pronounced *shshívátʹ*, *shchástiye*.

(27) The ordinary sound of the hissing and feeble consonant *З, з*, is that of the English *z*: *Ех.* звонъ, ringing (sound), pronounced *zvon*.

This letter also takes the sound of its corresponding strong consonant *с* at the end of words or syllables terminating with the hard semi-vowel *ѣ*, and when it is found before any strong consonant: *Ех.* возъ, a load; скáзка, tale, fable; pronounced *voss*; *skáskă*.

NOTE.—The *з* of the particles *из, воз, раз*, is changed into *с* when the word with which they are to be connected begins with a hard consonant:—

Ех. из . . . истребѣ́тъ, to destroy.
 воз . . . воскресѣ́нiе, resurrection.
 раз . . . распечатáтъ, to unseal.

(28) The sound of the lingual and strong consonant *Ц, ц*, is that of the compound English letter *ts*: *Ех.* царь, Tsar or Russian Emperor's title; пѣрецъ, pepper; pronounced *tsárʹ*, *pērěts*.

(29) The sound of the buzzing or hissing and strong consonant *Ч, ч*, is that of the compound English letters *ch* or *tch*: *Ех.* чѣпчикъ, cap or cowl, pronounced *tchēptchĭk*.

In the word *что́*, what that, (pronounced *shġtō*), and before the consonant *u*, the same letter takes the sound of *u*: *Ех.* нарóчно, designedly, pronounced *năřōshġnă*.

The word *то́чно* exactly, is, however, pronounced *totchnă*, to distinguish it from *то́шно*, to have nausea, pronounced *tōshġnă*.

(30) The sound of the buzzing or hissing and strong consonant

Щ, щ, is that of the compound English letters *shch* or *shtsh* : *Ex.* щитъ, shield, pronounced *shtsheet*¹.

Before the consonant *н* the same letter has the simple sound of *u* : *Ex.* помощникъ, assistant, pronounced *pămōsŋnik*.

(31) The sound of the palatal and liquid consonant *Л, л*, is *approximately* that of the English *l* : *Ex.* доль, dale, valley ; боль, pain ; pronounced *dol*, *bol*¹.

(32) The sound of the labial and liquid consonant *М, м*, is that of the English letter *m* : *Ex.* мать, mother, pronounced *măt*¹.

(33) The sound of the palatal and liquid consonant *Н, н*, is that of the English *n* : *Ex.* нашъ, our, ours ; онъ, he ; pronounced *năsh*, *ŏn*.

(34) The sound of the palatal and liquid consonant *Р, р*, is that of the English *r* *broadly articulated* : *Ex.* родъ, gender, race ; pronounced *rōd*.

N.B.—The letters *ѣ, ѓ*, have been omitted from these observations, because the first is practically obsolete, whilst the use of the second is confined to a few words only, taken from the Greek, in which its sound may be represented by the English letters *th*. Explanation, moreover, of the sounds of the letter *ѣ* will be found in § 8, page 2, of the Grammar.

Although an endeavour has been made to explain the pronunciation of the Russian letters, it must be confessed that all attempts to express the sounds of one language by the characters of another are imperfect, *oral* instruction being the only sure means of acquiring a correct pronunciation.

CHANGES WHICH RUSSIAN LETTERS UNDERGO.

Most of the apparent irregularities of Russian Etymology being founded upon the mutability of the letters, the Student is advised to pay particular attention to that part of the Grammar which treats of their changes and reciprocal effect upon each other in the formation of derivatives, and in the declension and modification of words. These changes will explain the omission of some rules that are to be found in other Grammars, but which are rendered superfluous by a knowledge of the more fundamental rules relating to the letters.

PERMUTATION OF RUSSIAN VOWELS, SEMI-VOWELS,
AND CONSONANTS, SUBJECT TO THE VARIOUS RULES
OF DERIVATION, DECLENSION, AND CONJUGATION.

VOWELS AND SEMI-VOWELS.

| | | | | |
|------------|---------------|---|----------|-------------------------|
| 1. и | } change into | i | } before | any other vowel. |
| 2. ъ | | o | | any two consonants. |
| 3. ъ and й | | e | | any consonant. |
| 4. я | | a | } after | Г, К, Х, Ж, Ч, Ш, Щ, Ц. |
| 5. ю | | y | | Г, К, Х, Ж, Ч, Ш, Щ. |
| 6. ы | | и | | Г, К, Х. |
| 7. е | | o | | Ж, Ч, Ш, Щ, Ц. |
| 8. о | | e | | и. |
| 9. ѣ | | и | | any vowel. |
| 10. ъ | | й | | |

CONSONANTS.

| | | | | | |
|---------|---------------|-------------|-------------------|----------|---------------------|
| 11. г | } change into | } ж | } before | и, у, ъ. | |
| 12. д | | | | } ч | } я, е, и, у, ю, ъ. |
| 13. з | | } ш | | | |
| 14. к | | | | | } щ |
| 15. т | | е, и, у, ъ. | | | |
| 16. ц | | | | } ш | |
| 17. х | | } щ | я, е, и, у, ю, ъ. | | |
| 18. с | | | | | } щ |
| 19. ск | | | } щ | | |
| 20. ст. | | | | } щ | |

EPENTHESIS.

Epenthesis, or the insertion of a letter in the middle of a word, is exemplified as follows : (a) the vowels *o* and *e* are inserted between two consonants at the end of words : *Ex.* огóнь, fire ; вѣтеръ, wind ;— (b) the consonant *л* is inserted after the letters *б, в, м, н, ф*, when they would otherwise be followed by *ю* or *е* : *Ex.* люблю́, I love (from любить); дешѣвле, cheaper (from дѣшево), &c.;—(c) the consonant *н* is prefixed to the pronoun of the third person when it stands after a preposition or an adverb : *Ex.* у него́, he had ; прѳтивъ нихъ, against them.

PROSTHESIS.

Prosthesis is the placing of a letter at the beginning of a word to facilitate pronunciation: *Ех.* *восьмь*, eight, instead of *осемь*; *оржаной*, of rye, instead of *ржаной*.

APSCOPE.

Aprscope is the modifying of a vowel at the end of a word: *Ех.* *чтобы*, in order that, instead of *чтобы*; *со мной*, with me, instead of *со мною*, &c.

SYNCOPE.

Syncope is the striking out of a letter from the middle of a word to facilitate or soften the pronunciation: *Ех.* *полтора*, $1\frac{1}{2}$, instead of *полетора*, &c.

CLASSIFICATION OF RUSSIAN WORDS.

All Russian words are either *primitive* (первообразное)—*Ех.* *садъ*, garden; or *derivative* (производное)—*Ех.* *садовникъ*, gardener; or *compound* (сложное)—*Ех.* *садоводство*, gardening (from *садъ*, garden, and *водить*, to conduct).

RUSSIAN WORDS TRACEABLE TO ROOTS.

Every Russian word is, moreover, traceable to a *root* (корень), or reducible to certain *radical* syllables or letters which become words by the junction of other syllables or letters. Roots may be divided into *principal* and *secondary*. From the *principal* (главный) roots denominative words or parts of speech can be formed by the mere addition of a semi-vowel or a vowel: *Ех.* from the root *вид* comes *видъ*, sight; from the root *рук* comes *рука*, a hand. The *secondary* (придаточный) roots are subdivided into, (a) *initial* (предыдущий), which consist of auxiliary words or particles in union with other principal roots at the beginning of which they are placed. These are called *prefixes* or *prepositions*: *Ех.* *у-ходъ*, departure; *от-казъ*, refusal, &c.;—(b) *final* (последующий), or such as form the termination of other principal roots. These are called *suffixes*: *Ех.* *вод-а*, water, *дѣл-амъ*, to do, &c.

The roots of the following words can at once be traced after

removing their prefixes and affixes, and then reducing compound words to derivative, and derivative to primitive, as seen above :—

преизбы́точествовать, to superabound (root *быт*).

засви́дѣтельствова́нiе, attestation (root *вид*).

незави́симость, independence (root *вие*).

неизмѣ́римый, immeasurable (root *мѣр*).

предсѣ́дательствовать, to preside (root *сѣд*).

сострада́нiе, compassion (root *срад*).

изобрѣ́тательность, inventive faculty (root *брѣт*).

вспомо́гательный, auxiliary (root *мог*).

удовлетво́рительный, satisfactory (root *твор*), &c.

ROOTS OF REGULAR RUSSIAN VERBS.

The root of regular Russian verbs can be ascertained by striking off the final letters *тъ* of the infinite mood of the imperfect aspect, together with any of the preceding vowels *а, и, ъ, о, у, е, я*.

E R R A T A.

| Page | Line | For | Read | Page | Line | For | Read |
|------|------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|------|------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 2 | 25 | лёгкій | лёгкій | 54 | 3 | переидти | перейти |
| 3 | 33 | парѣче | парѣче | 55 | 33 | подулъ | подулъ |
| 13 | 23 | старосту | старость | 61 | 15 | пойду | пойду |
| 15 | 5 | зеркаль | зеркаль | 62 | 18 | раскративать | раскрашивать |
| " | 35 | руки | руки | 63 | 12 | увидаль | увидѣль |
| " | 36 | руки | руки | " | 39 | стукну-ишь-ить | стукну-ешь-еть |
| 17 | 14 | in the oblique cases | in this one oblique case | " | " | -имъ -ите -уть | -емъ -ете -уть |
| 18 | 9 | муравѣвъ | муравѣвъ | 64 | 1 | дѣлай, живи | дѣлай, живи |
| 19 | 18 | пулковъ | чулковъ | " | 45 | видывавшій | видывавшій |
| 20 | 18 | он | in | 65 | 5 | сблавъ | сблавъ |
| " | 20 | медвѣпенюкъ | медвѣженюкъ | 67 | 42 | praising himself | praising one's self |
| " | 22 | львѣнки and мышѣнки | львѣнки and мышѣнки | 68 | 3 | улыбнувшись | улыбавшись |
| " | " | львата | львата | 69 | 44 | о | or |
| 21 | 2 | церкви | церкви | 71 | 5 | ѣзжать | ѣзжать |
| " | 8 | " | " | 72 | 18 | prefixes | aspects |
| " | 27 | воробѣй | воробѣй | 74 | 31 | work | wink |
| 22 | 4 | котѣль | котѣль | 76 | 16 | смотрящійся | смотрящійся |
| " | 5 | note | knot | " | 22 | ый, ая, ео | ый, ая, ео |
| " | 17 | Вихоръ, вихра | Вихоръ, вихра | " | 37 | by means of either | from either |
| 24 | 21 | пѣтля | петля | 78 | 9 | force | voice |
| 27 | 3 | сегодняшний | сегодняшній | " | 24 | пѣсколько | пѣсколько |
| " | 14 | устѣченный | устѣченный | " | 27 | весьма | весьма |
| " | 18 | великъ -а -о | великъ -а -о | 79 | 1 | провождать | проводить |
| 28 | 16 | чѣрныи | чѣрный | 80 | 6 | не по, нѣтъ not | не not, нѣтъ по |
| 29 | 22 | най, наилучшій | най, наилучшій | " | 15 | такимъ | такимъ |
| " | 23 | наиболѣе | наиболѣе | 82 | 18 | вѣдъ | вѣдъ |
| 30 | 6 | ниже | ниже | 84 | 28 | adjective про-шлый | past tense of пройти |
| " | 7 | наилучшій | наилучшій | 88 | 10 | not so | not to |
| " | 8 | наихудшій | наихудшій | " | 35 | первымъ | первымъ |
| 33 | 19 | сестеръ | сестеръ | 90 | 18 | п | я |
| " | 23 | " | " | " | 28 | возобновились | возобновились |
| 36 | 7 | олѣпьяго | олѣней | 91 | 6 | Kalmucks, a | Kalmucks are a |
| " | 8 | олѣпью | " | " | 23 | изобилий | изобилии |
| 39 | 28 | два, sing., for all genders | два, sing., for masc. & neut. | 92 | 14 | Россій | Россіи |
| " | 29 | двѣ, plur. | двѣ, fem. | " | 20 | мольбы | мольбы |
| 41 | 2 | половина | половина | 93 | 2 | сраженій | сраженіи |
| 46 | 6 | собобо | собобо | " | 4 | множесвто | множество |
| " | 12 | -ые -ия | -іе -іи | 94 | 8 | чѣе | чѣе |
| 47 | 11 | " " | " " | " | 24 | минеральныхъ | минеральныхъ |
| " | 14 | " " | " " | 95 | 14 | сочиненіи | сочиненіи |
| 50 | 8 | быхъ | быхъ | " | 34 | требовать | требовать |
| 52 | 3 | что ? | (что) ? | 97 | 2 | войска | войска |
| " | 25 | щебечѣтъ, ржеть | щебечѣтъ, ржѣтъ | " | 13 | жертвовать | жертвовать |
| " | 27 | воетъ | вобѣтъ | " | 18 | завѣдываніе | завѣдываніе |
| " | 28 | мычатъ | мычатъ | 98 | 25 | милосты | милости |
| " | 29 | блеетъ | блеетъ | 99 | 29 | моремъ | моремъ |
| " | 30 | мяукаетъ | мяукаетъ | 105 | 34 | Алпы | Альпы |
| " | " | свинья | свинья | " | 37 | Алпійскихъ | Альпійскихъ |
| " | 31 | хрюкаетъ | хрюкаетъ | 107 | 28 | Солнце | Солнце |
| " | " | воркуетъ | воркуетъ | 109 | 23 | королевское | Королевское |
| " | 32 | клочетъ | клочетъ | 110 | 18 | Ниститутъ | Ниститутъ |
| " | 33 | квакаетъ | квакаетъ | " | 26 | Рождество | Рождество |
| " | 34 | жужжать | жужжать | " | 28 | подвязки | Подвязки |
| " | 35 | жужжать | жужжать | 111 | 8 | проишествіе | проишествіе |
| 53 | 30 | скрипкъ | скрипкъ | 112 | 9 | вѣдѣніе | вѣдѣніе |
| | | | | " | 67 | жельза | жельза |

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. Russian Grammar elucidates those rules of the Russian language which should be adhered to, both in Conversation and in Writing.

§ 2. In order to correctly express our thoughts, we must know, (1) the proper use and meaning of words in all their inflections or changes; (2) how to connect such words so that the sense of our expressions may be perfectly clear; (3) how to write words in conformity with rules laid down by the best authors.

§ 3. Agreeably to the above requirements, Grammar divides itself into three parts:—

- I. *Etymology* (Словопроизведѣніе).
- II. *Syntax* (Словосочинѣніе).
- III. *Orthography* (Правописаніе).

FIRST PART.

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 4. Under the head of Etymology are explained, (1) the *derivation* (происхожденіе), (2) the *construction* (составъ), (3) the *signification* (значеніе), and (4) the *changes* (перемѣна¹) of words.

§ 5. A word may express any sort of idea or feeling: *Ex.* другъ friend, море sea, скромность modesty, добрый good, kind, пять five,

¹ All Russian words placed within brackets after English words are in their primary terminations. They are so placed in order to let the student see, without search, what are the corresponding Russian equivalents for such terms as are in common use in every grammar. *Trans.*

Я I, ува́жать to consider, чита́ющий¹ he who reads, бѣ́гал² running, за́втра to-morrow, ме́жду amongst, between, слѣ́довательно consequently, ахъ! ah! oh! Ой oh! ah!

§ 6. Words are made up of *syllables* (сло́гъ), and syllables of *letters* (бѹ́ква).

§ 7. A letter is that which is produced by separate sounds of the voice.

§ 8. There are thirty-six letters in the Russian Alphabet.³

Obs.—The Slavonic letter *r* is pronounced in a twofold manner, (1) as *u* in the word мѹ́ро chrism or holy oil, and сѹпѹ́дъ synod; and (2) as *e* in the words Евѹ́нгеліе Gospel, and Исѹ́въ Esau. The letter *r* is only used in modern Russian in the word мѹ́ро, and its derivatives, such as мѹро-пома́заніе rite of anointing, мѹропѹ́сица bearer of the holy oil, etc.

§ 9. Russian letters are divided into *vowels* (гла́сная бѹ́ква), *semi-vowels* (полу́гла́сная бѹ́ква), and *consonants* (согла́сная бѹ́ква).

§ 10. The vowels are pronounced without the aid of other letters. They are as follows:—а, е, и, і, о, у, ы, ѣ, э, ю, я.

N.B.—The vowel *e* accented is pronounced in several words like *io* (ію): *Ex.* ёлка fir-tree, лё́дъ ice, ме́дъ honey, mead, поё́тъ⁴ he, she, or it sings. In such cases two dots are sometimes placed over the letter *e*, thus *ě*.

§ 11. The semi-vowel *й* (or *и* short) is written and pronounced after *vowels*: *Ex.* Андре́й Andrew, лёгкі́й light, поко́йный tranquil.

The semi-vowels *ъ* and *ь* are employed after consonants. *Ъ* gives them a hard sound: *Ex.* столъ table, отѣ́здъ departure. But *ь* gives a soft sound to the consonant which precedes it: *Ex.* столъ so much, so many, дѣ́льный business-like.

The letter *ѣ* (и́жица, name of this Slavonic letter), as has been said in the observation at foot of § 8, is pronounced in a twofold way, viz. either like the vowel *u*, or like the

¹ First person, singular number, present participle, active, of the verb чита́ть, to read. *Trans.*

² Present gerund of the verb бѣ́гать, to run. *Trans.*

³ See Table facing p. xi. *Trans.*

⁴ Third person, singular number, present tense, of the verb пѣ́тъ, to sing. *Trans.*

consonant *с*. In the first case, therefore, it may be reckoned as a vowel, and in the second as a consonant.

§ 12. The consonants are uttered with the aid of vowels. The consonants are б, в, г, д, ж, з, к, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѳ.

§ 13. One vowel, or the coupling of one or more vowels with semi-vowels or consonants, forms a syllable: *Ex.* а, о, у, я, изъ, отъ, ай, ей, при-стро́-ить, от-дѣль-ный, у-кра-ше́-ни-е.

§ 14. Words are made up of one or more syllables, and are classified as *mono-syllabic* (односло́жное), *dis-syllabic* (двусло́жное), *tri-syllabic* (трехсло́жное), and *poly-syllabic* (многосло́жное): *Ex.* полкъ regiment, за-ко́нъ law, че-ло-ви́къ man, со-вер-ше́н-ство perfection.

§ 15. Words may be either *primary* (ко́рenníе) or *derivative* (произво́дное).

§ 16. Primary words are such as are not derived from other words: *Ex.* весе́лье joy, жалѣ́ть to pity.

§ 17. Derivative words are formed from the primary: *Ex.* весе́льча́къ merry fellow, весе́лый merry, весе́лится to make oneself merry, &c., derived from весе́лье; жа́лость pity, сожа́лѣнiе commiseration, жа́лкій miserable, бе́зжа́лостный pitiless, сжа́лится to take pity on, жалъ it is a pity, &c., derived from жалѣ́ть.

§ 18. Compound (сло́жное) words are formed by the junction of two or more single words: *Ex.* морепла́ватель navigator, благода́нiе good action, безпристра́стiе impartiality, &c. *Integral* (соста́внiе) words can be formed in like manner, such as Генера́лъ-Майо́ръ Major-General, кто-нибу́дь someone, &c.

§ 19. All words in the Russian language are divided, according to their meaning, into nine *parts of speech* (часть рѣчи.) These are:—

| | | | |
|-------|------|--------------|-------------------------|
| I. | Noun | Substantive | (Имя Существи́тельное). |
| II. | „ | Adjective | (Имя Прилагáтельное). |
| III. | „ | Numeral | (Имя Числи́тельное). |
| IV. | | Pronoun | (Мѣстоимѣ́нiе). |
| V. | | Verb | (Глаго́лъ). |
| VI. | | Adverb | (Нарѣ́чiе). |
| VII. | | Preposition | (Предло́гъ). |
| VIII. | | Conjunction | (Сою́зъ). |
| IX. | | Interjection | (Междомѣ́тiе). |

§ 20. Words belonging to the first six parts of speech have variable terminations, whereas those belonging to the three last named do not alter in any way.

THE NOUN SUBSTANTIVE (Имя Существітельное).

§ 21. A Noun Substantive is the name of any object: *Ex.* Богъ God, домъ house, землі earth, терпѣніе patience, часъ hour, о'clock, &c.

§ 22. *Objects* (предмѣтъ) are (1) *animate* (одушевлѣнный), *i.e.* those which have life and voluntary motion: *Ex.* человѣкъ man, Пётръ Peter, &c., &c.

Obs.—The *names* (имя) by which we call people are *personal* (личный) objects: *Ex.* братъ brother, сестра sister, Александръ, Alexander, Марья Mary, полковникъ colonel, солдатъ soldier, мастеръ master, &c.

(2) *Inanimate* (неодушевлѣнный), *i.e.* those which have not life and voluntary motion. *Ex.* дубъ oak, домъ house, комната room, перо feather.

Obs.—To the class of inanimate objects belong the *sensitive* (чувственный): *Ex.* блескъ splendour, горечь bitterness, запахъ smell.

(3) *Intellectual* (умственный) or *abstract* (отвлечѣнный), which are presented to the understanding by such words as скромность modesty, прилежаніе application, воображеніе imagination, время time, годъ year, &c.

Obs.—Богъ God, Богочеловѣкъ godly man, ангелъ angel, духъ spirit, душа soul, and other similar nouns which denote immaterial beings, are called *spiritual* (духовный) objects.

§ 23. Nouns Substantive are divided into (1) *appellative* (нарицательное), or *common* (общее), under which denomination come all objects which are common to a class. *Ex.* человѣкъ man, король king, городъ town, радость joy, &c.

(2) *Proper* (собственное), by which we distinguish one object from all others that may be like it. *Ex.* Александръ Alexander, Марья Mary, Россія Russia, Волга Volga, &c.

Obs.—To the proper nouns belong not only all Christian names of people, but also their patronymics, and family

or surnames. *Ex.* Ива́новичъ son of John, Петро́вна daughter of Peter, Тургене́въ Toorgénéff, Пу́шкинъ Pooshkin, &c.

- (3) *Collective* (Собира́тельное), which by the use of one word imply few or many objects representing the same sort or kind. *Ex.* семе́йство family, наро́дъ people, во́йско army, ле́съ forest, &c.

Obs.—In order to note a quantity of animals, birds, or insects, the following collective nouns are used: ста́до herd or flock of cattle or sheep, табу́нъ drove or stud of horses, ста́я flight or covey of birds, or pack of dogs, ро́й swarm of bees, &c.

- (4) *Material* (веще́ственное), which indicate the substance of the object, be the quantity large or small. *Ex.* зо́лото gold, ме́дь copper, де́рево wood, мука́ flour, ма́сло oil, butter, &c.

§ 24. It is a peculiarity of the Russian language that nouns substantive may be (1) *augmentative* (увеличи́тельное), or those which show the unusually large size of an object. *Ex.* солда́тище big soldier, ручи́ща large hand, столи́ще huge table, &c.

- (2) *Diminutive* (уменьши́тельное), or those which designate the smallness of the object. *Ex.* солда́тникъ small soldier, ручка́ small hand, столи́къ little table, &c.

To the class of diminutive nouns belong (a) the *complimentary* (привѣтственное) or *caressing* (ласка́тельное), which are used in the Russian language when addressing or naming favourite objects, or in order to give expression to a sense of love for such. *Ex.* брата́ецъ dear brother, сестри́ца dear sister, Ва́ня, Ваню́ша, Ва́ничка dear John, Катя́, Катю́ша, Ка́тенька dear Kate, лоша́душка dear horse, коро́вушка dear cow, руче́нька dear little hand, &c. (b) *Derogatory* (уничижи́тельное), or those which give expression to a want of regard for an object, or a sense of its insignificance, or a contempt for it. *Ex.* книжо́нка miserable book, домо́шко wretched house, лошаде́нка sorry horse, &c.

§ 25. In the case of nouns substantive the *gender* родъ, *number* число, and *case* паде́жъ, should be observed

§ 26. Nouns substantive in the Russian language have three genders (родъ), viz. *masculine* (мужескій), *feminine* (женскій), and *neuter* (средній).

The gender of nouns substantive is ascertained either by their meaning or by their termination. As touching the former, all objects of the male sex (no matter what may be their termination) are of the masculine gender. *Ex.* слуга servant, дядя uncle, подмастерье foreman, мѣняло money-changer, &c.; and objects of the female sex (no matter what may be their termination) belong to the feminine gender. *Ex.* служанка servant-maid, няня nurse, дочь daughter, &c.

The same rule applies to animate objects which distinguish *male* (самецъ) and *female* (самка) in animals. *Ex.* левъ lion, львица lioness, баранъ ram, овца ewe or sheep, петухъ cock, курица hen, &c.

Nouns ending in *й* and *ъ* belong to the masculine gender. *Ex.* муравей ant, орёлъ eagle, покой rest, столъ table, &c.

Nouns ending in *а* and *я* belong to the feminine gender. *Ex.* шпага sword, лилия lily, забота care, душа soul, &c.

Nouns ending in *о*, *е*, and *мя* belong to the neuter gender. *Ex.* окно window, море sea, время time, &c.

To the neuter gender belongs also дитя child.

Of nouns substantive, which terminate in *ь*, some belong to the masculine gender. *Ex.* день day, корабль ship; whilst others belong to the feminine gender, as тѣнь shadow, площадь plane, surface, &c.

§ 27. Besides the above, there are, in the Russian language, other nouns substantive ending in *а* and *я*, which are of the *common* (общій) gender. In other words, such nouns as have the same termination for both masculine and feminine genders. *Ex.* сирота orphan, бродяга vagabond, плакса whiner, родня kindred, &c.

§ 28. Augmentative and diminutive nouns, no matter what may be their terminations, belong to the gender of those nouns from which they are derived.

§ 29. Foreign nouns employed in the Russian language which end in *u* and *y*, when they denote animate objects, are of the masculine gender, and when they refer to inanimate or abstract

objects are of the neuter gender. *Ех. колибри* humming-bird, *какадý* cockatoo, which are of the masculine gender: *пари*=закладъ bet, wager, which is of the neuter gender.

§ 30. Personal nouns have two genders, viz. masculine and feminine. *Ех. Императоръ* Emperor, *Императрица* Empress, *Генералъ* General, *Генеральша* General's wife, *монахъ* monk, *монахиня* nun, *сосѣдъ* male neighbour, *сосѣдка* female neighbour, &c. *Директриса* directress, *инспектриса* inspectress, *экономка* housekeeper, refer solely to the persons of the female sex who perform the duties indicated by their respective designations; whereas, on the other hand, *директорша*, *инспекторша*, *экономша* are the Russian designations for the wives of a director, inspector, and house steward respectively.

With regard to the names of peoples, the feminine is derived from the masculine thus:—from *Россiйнинъ* Russian (man), comes *Россiйнка* Russian (woman); from *Англичанинъ* Englishman, *Англичанка* Englishwoman; from *Нѣмецъ* German (man), we get *Нѣмка* German (woman), &c.

Personal nouns which denote kindred or affinity have for each sex separate denominations:—

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Отѣцъ</i> father, | <i>Матъ</i> mother. |
| <i>Сынъ</i> son, | <i>Дочъ</i> daughter. |
| <i>Братъ</i> brother, | <i>Сестра</i> sister. |
| <i>Дядя</i> uncle, | <i>Тётка</i> aunt. |

§ 31. In the Russian language the denominations of the several degrees of relationship are extremely numerous. It may be well to observe the following:—

| |
|---|
| <i>Тестъ</i> father-in-law, wife's father. |
| <i>Тёща</i> mother-in-law, wife's mother. |
| <i>Шуринъ</i> brother-in-law, wife's brother. |
| <i>Своичина</i> or <i>Своиченица</i> sister-in-law, wife's sister. |
| <i>Своикъ</i> brother-in-law, wife's sister's husband. |
| <i>Свѣкоръ</i> father-in-law, husband's father. |
| <i>Свекровъ</i> mother-in-law, husband's mother. |
| <i>Дѣверъ</i> or <i>Дѣверъ</i> brother-in-law, husband's brother. |
| <i>Золóвка</i> sister-in-law, husband's sister. |
| <i>Зятъ</i> son-in-law or brother-in-law, daughter's husband or sister's husband. |

Невѣстка daughter-in-law or sister-in-law, son's wife or brother's wife.

Отчимъ or Вѣтчимъ stepfather.

Мáчиха stepmother.

Пáсынокъ stepson.

Пáдчерица stepdaughter.

§ 32. There are two *numbers* (числó). The *singular* (единственное), which speaks of one object: *Ех.* братъ brother, рѣ́ка river. The *plural* (множественное), which refers to two or more objects of the same sort: *Ех.* бра́тья brothers, рѣ́ки rivers, &c.

§ 33. Certain nouns substantive are used in the singular number *only*, whilst others, although referring to one object, have only a plural form.

Of the former class there are (1) the greater part of the *proper* (собственное) nouns: *Ех.* Римъ Rome, Везу́вий Vesuvius, &c.

(2) the greater number of the *material* (вещественное) nouns: *Ех.* зóлото gold, мо́локо milk, &c.

(3) the names of the virtues and the vices: *Ех.* терпе́ние patience, лѣ́ность indolence, &c.

(4) many of the *abstract* (отвлечённое) nouns: *Ех.* сча́стie fortune, ста́рость old age, &c.

(5) many of the names of plants, especially of the kitchen-garden: *Ех.* ща́вель sorrel, лу́къ onion, &c.

Of the latter class some have meanings different to that of the singular form: *Ех.* лю́ди people, но́жницы pair of scissors, вору́та gate, &c. Others are the names of old towns and places: *Ех.* Аѣ́ины Athens, Тѣрмопíлы Thermopylæ, &c.

§ 34. Certain nouns have in the singular number one signification, and in the plural another. *Ех.* вѣ́съ weight, вѣ́сы scales, деньга́ $\frac{1}{4}$ copeck, де́ньги money, часъ hour, часы́ watch, clock, &c.

§ 35. *Cases* (паде́жъ) are the terminations of nouns which show the various relations in which objects stand to each other.

§ 36. In the Russian language there are seven *cases*. They answer to certain questions:—

- (1) *Nominative* (именительный), which answers to the questions—кто? who? что? what?¹ *Ex.* Кто пришёл? (past tense of verb прийти), *who* came? *Ans.* Братъ brother. Что у тебя въ рукахъ? *What* is there (or hast thou) in (thy) hands? *Ans.* шляпа a hat.
- (2) *Vocative* (звательный), which has its termination like the nominative, points to the designation of the object to which we refer. *Ex.* Братъ! поди² сюда. *Brother!* come here. Здравъ-ли ты, любезный другъ? Art thou well, dear friend?
- (3) *Genitive* (родительный), which answers to the questions—Кого? Чего? Чей? Чья? Чье? Of whom? Of which or of what? Whose (*masc. fem. neuter*)? *Ex.* Кого здѣсь нѣтъ?³ *Who* is not here? *Ans.* Брата, brother.—Чего здѣсь нѣтъ? *What* is not here? *Ans.* Шляпы, the hat.—Чей этотъ домъ? *Whose* house (is) this? *Ans.* Моего пріятеля, My friend's.
- (4) *Dative* (дательный), which answers to the questions—Кому? Чему? To whom? To which? or to what? *Ex.* Кому ты отдалъ⁴ книгу? *To whom* didst thou give back the book? *Ans.* Брату, To the brother.—Чему ты удивляешься?⁵ *What* dost thou admire? *Ans.* шляпу the hat.
- (5) *Accusative* (винительный), which answers to the questions—Кого? Что? whom? which? what? *Ex.* Кого ты видишь?⁶ *Whom* dost thou see? *Ans.* брата brother. Что ты держишь?⁷ *What* dost thou hold? *Ans.* шляпу the hat.
- (6) *Instrumental* (творительный), which answers to the ques-

¹ The questions, Кто? Кого? Кому? Кѣмъ? О комъ? serve for the animate nouns; whilst Что? Чего? Чему? Чѣмъ? О чѣмъ? are used in the cases of the inanimate and abstract nouns.

² Second person, singular number, imperative mood, of the verb пойти. *Trans.*

³ With the impersonal verb нѣтъ the genitive case is required. *Trans.*

⁴ Past tense of the verb отдать. *Trans.*

⁵ Present tense of the verb удивляться, which governs the dative. *Trans.*

⁶ Present tense of the verb видѣть. *Trans.*

⁷ Present tense of the verb держать. *Trans.*

tions—Кѣмъ? Чѣмъ? by *whom*? by *what*? or by *which*? *Ex.* Кѣмъ ты доволенъ? ¹ With *whom* art thou satisfied? *Ans.* Братомъ, with the brother.—Чѣмъ ты доволенъ? with *what*, or with *which*, art thou satisfied? *Ans.* шляпою, with the hat.

- (7) *Prepositional* (предложный), which answers to the questions—о комъ? о чёмъ? при комъ? при чёмъ? на комъ? на чёмъ? въ комъ? въ чёмъ? about *whom*? about *which*, or *what*? near or at *whom*? near or at *which* or *what*? on *whom*? on *which* or *what*? in *whom*? in *which* or *what*? *Ex.* О комъ я говорю? ² about *whom* do I speak? *Ans.* О братѣ, about brother.—О чёмъ я говорю? about *which* or *what* do I speak? *Ans.* О шляпѣ, about the hat.

Obs.—The nominative and vocative cases, the terminations of which are not subject to change (further than is caused by number), are called the *direct* (прямой) cases; whereas all the other cases, the terminations of which do alter (differing the one from the other), are called the *oblique* (косвенный) cases. The prepositional case is always used with *prepositions* (предлоги). The following are the most frequently used prepositions:—о, or объ, or обо (about), на (on or upon), при (near, at, in the presence of), въ or во (in or at).

§ 37. The *declension* (склонѣнiе) of nouns marks the changes of termination which they undergo according to number and case. In the Russian language there are three declensions.

To the first belong those nouns substantive which terminate in *ъ*, *и* and *о*, being of the masculine gender.

To the second those which terminate in *а* and *я*, of both the masculine and feminine genders, and those in *о* of the feminine gender only.

To the third those which terminate in *о*, *е* and *мя*, being of the neuter gender.

§ 38. Nouns substantive are declined according to the following tables:—

¹ Abbreviated form of the adjective довольный. *Trans.*

² Present tense of the verb говорить. *Trans.*

Singular Number.

| Падеж. Cases. | 1ST DECLENSION. | | | 2ND DECLENSION. | | | 3RD DECLENSION. | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|-------------------|----|----|--------------------|-----|-------|
| | MASC. TERMINATION. | | | FEM. TERMINATION. | | | NEUT. TERMINATION. | | |
| Имен. и Зват. Nom. & Voc. | ъ | й | ь | а | я | ь | о | е | мя |
| Родит. Gen. | а | я | я | ы | и | и | а | я | ени |
| Дат. Dat. | у | ю | ю | ѣ | ѣ | и | у | ю | ени |
| Вин. Acc. | { а ѣ } | { я й } | { я ь } | у | ю | ь | о | е | мя |
| Твор. Instr. | омъ | емъ | емъ | ою | ею | ью | омъ | емъ | енемъ |
| Пред. Prep. | ѣ | ѣ | ѣ | ѣ | ѣ | и | ѣ | ѣ | ени |

Plural Number.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|------------|------------|-------------|-----|-----|-------|
| Имен. и Зват. Nom. & Voc. | ы | и | и | ы | и | и | а | я | ена |
| Родит. Gen. | овъ | евъ | ей | ъ | ь | ей | ъ | ей | епъ |
| Дат. Dat. | амъ | ямъ | ямъ | амъ | ямъ | ямъ | амъ | ямъ | енамъ |
| Вин. Acc. | { овъ ы } | { евъ и } | { ей и } | { ѣ ы } | { ь и } | { ей и } | а | я | ена |
| Твор. Instr. | ами | ями | ями | ами | ями | ями | ами | ями | енами |
| Пред. Prep. | ахъ | яхъ | яхъ | ахъ | яхъ | яхъ | ахъ | яхъ | енахъ |

EXAMPLES OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Singular Number.

| | Animate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Animate Object. |
|-------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| И. З. | слонъ, elephant. | столъ, table. | покой, rest, or room. | царь, Tsar. |
| Р. | слонá, of an elephant. | столá, of a table. | поко́я, of rest, &c. | царя́, of a Tsar. |
| Д. | слопу́, to an elephant. | столу́, to a table. | покою́, to rest, &c. | царю́, to a Tsar. |
| В. | слонá, an elephant. | столъ, a table. | поко́йи, rest, &c. | царя́, a Tsar. |
| Т. | слонóмъ, by an elephant. | столóмъ, by a table. | поко́емъ, with rest, &c. | царёмъ, by a Tsar. |
| П. | о слонѣ, about an elephant. | на столѣ, on a table. | въ покоѣ, at rest, &c. | при царѣ, in the presence of a Tsar. |

Plural Number.

| | Animate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Animate Object. |
|-------|--------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| И. З. | слоны, elephants. | столы, tables. | покои, rooms. | цари, Tsars. |
| Р. | слоновъ, of elephants. | столовъ, of tables. | покоевъ, of rooms. | царей, of Tsars. |
| Д. | слонамъ, to elephants. | столамъ, to tables. | покоямъ, to rooms. | царямъ, to Tsars. |
| В. | слоновъ, elephants. | столы, tables. | покои, rooms. | царей, Tsars. |
| Т. | слонами, by elephants. | столами, by tables. | покоями, with rooms. | царями, by Tsars. |
| П. | о слонахъ, about elephants. | на столахъ, on tables. | въ покаяхъ, in rooms. | при царяхъ, in the presence of Tsars. |

Singular Number.

| | Animate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. |
|-------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| И. З. | льстецъ, flatterer. | урожа́й, crop. | трофе́й, trophy. | гвоздь, nail. |
| Р. | льстеца́, of a flatterer. | урожа́я, of a crop. | трофе́я, of a trophy. | гвоздя́, of a nail. |
| Д. | льстецу́, to a flatterer. | урожа́ю, to a crop. | трофе́ю, to a trophy. | гвоздю́, to a nail. |
| В. | льстеца́, a flatterer. | урожа́й, a crop. | трофе́й, a trophy. | гвоздь, a nail. |
| Т. | льстецо́мъ, by a flatterer. | урожа́емъ, by a crop. | трофе́емъ, with a trophy. | гвозде́мъ, by a nail. |
| П. | о льстецѣ́, about a flatterer. | о́бъ урожа́ѣ́, about a crop. | о трофе́ѣ́, about a trophy. | о гвозде́ѣ́, about a nail. |

Plural Number.

| | Animate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. |
|-------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| И. З. | льстецы́, flatterers. | урожа́н, crops. | трофе́и, trophies. | гвозди́, nails. |
| Р. | льстецо́въ, of flatterers. | урожа́евъ. of crops. | трофе́евъ, of trophies. | гвозде́й, of nails. |
| Д. | льстеца́мъ, to flatterers. | урожа́ямъ, to crops. | трофе́ямъ, to trophies. | гвоздя́мъ, to nails. |
| В. | льстецо́въ, flatterers. | урожа́н, crops. | трофе́и, trophies. | гвозди́, nails. |
| Т. | льстеца́ми, by flatterers. | урожа́ями, by crops. | трофе́ями, with trophies. | гвоздя́ми, by nails. |
| П. | о льстеца́хъ, about flatterers. | о́бъ урожа́яхъ. about crops. | о трофе́яхъ, about trophies. | о гвоздя́хъ, about nails. |

EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Singular Number.

| | Animate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. |
|-------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| И. 3. | стáроста, headman. | звѣздá, star. | пу́ля, bullet. | цѣ́пь, chain. |
| Р. | ста́росты, of a headman. | звѣзды́, of a star. | пу́ли, of a bullet. | цѣ́пи, of a chain. |
| Д. | ста́ростѣ́, to a headman. | звѣздѣ́, to a star. | пу́лѣ́, to a bullet. | цѣ́пи, to a chain. |
| В. | ста́росту́, a headman. | звѣздѹ́, a star. | пу́лю́, a bullet. | цѣ́пѹ́, a chain. |
| Т. | ста́ростою́, by a headman. | звѣздѹ́ю, by a star. | пу́лею́, by a bullet. | цѣ́пью́, with a chain. |
| П. | о ста́ростѣ́, about a headman. | въ звѣздѣ́, in a star. | о пу́лѣ́, about a bullet. | на цѣ́пи́, on a chain. |

Plural Number.

| | | | | |
|-------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| И. 3. | ста́росты́, headmen. | звѣзды́, stars. | пу́ли́, bullets. | цѣ́пи́, chains. |
| Р. | ста́ростѣ́́, of headmen. | звѣздѣ́́, of stars. | пу́лѣ́́, of bullets. | цѣ́пей́́, of chains. |
| Д. | ста́ростамѣ́́, to headmen. | звѣздамѣ́́, to stars. | пу́лямѣ́́, to bullets. | цѣ́пямѣ́́, to chains. |
| В. | ста́росту́́, headmen. | звѣзды́́, stars. | пу́ли́́, bullets. | цѣ́пи́́, chains. |
| Т. | ста́ростаму́́, by headmen. | звѣздамѹ́́, by stars. | пу́лямѹ́́, by bullets. | цѣ́пямѹ́́, with chains. |
| П. | о ста́ростѣ́́хъ́, about headmen. | въ звѣздахѣ́́́, in stars. | о пу́ляхѣ́́́, about bullets. | въ цѣ́пяхѣ́́́, in chains. |

Singular Number.

| | Animate Object. | Animate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. |
|-------|----------------------------------|--|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| И. 3. | сиротá, orphan. | дѣ́дя́, uncle. | недѣ́ля́, week. | кѣ́сть, bunch, or wrist. |
| Р. | сироты́́, of an orphan. | дѣ́ди́́, of an uncle. | недѣ́ли́́, of a week. | кѣ́сти́́, of a bunch, &c. |
| Д. | сиротѣ́́, to an orphan. | дѣ́дѣ́́, to an uncle. | недѣ́лѣ́́, to a week. | кѣ́сти́́, to a bunch, &c. |
| В. | сиротѹ́́, an orphan. | дѣ́дѹ́́, an uncle. | недѣ́лю́́, a week. | кѣ́сть, a bunch, &c. |
| Т. | сиротѹ́́ю, by an orphan. | дѣ́дею́́, by an uncle. | недѣ́лею́́, by a week. | кѣ́стью́́, with a bunch, &c. |
| П. | о сиротѣ́́́, about an orphan. | при дѣ́дѣ́́́, in the presence of an uncle. | въ недѣ́лѣ́́́, in a week. | въ кѣ́сти́́́, in a bunch, &c. |

Plural Number.

| | Animate Object. | Animate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. |
|-------|-------------------------------|--|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| И. З. | сирѣты, orphans. | дѣди, uncles. | недѣли, weeks. | кѣсти, bunches, &c. |
| Р. | сирѣтъ, of orphans. | дѣдей, of uncles. | недѣль, of weeks. | кѣстей, of bunches, &c. |
| Д. | сирѣтамъ, to orphans. | дѣдямъ, to uncles. | недѣлямъ, to weeks. | кѣстямъ, to bunches, &c. |
| В. | сирѣтъ, orphans. | дѣдей, uncles. | недѣли, weeks. | кѣсти, bunches, &c. |
| Т. | сирѣтами, by orphans. | дѣдами, by uncles. | недѣлями, by weeks. | кѣстями, with bunches, &c. |
| П. | о сирѣтахъ, about orphans. | при дѣдяхъ, in the presence of uncles. | въ недѣляхъ, in weeks. | въ кѣстяхъ, in bunches, &c. |

EXAMPLES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Singular Number.

| | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. | Inanimate Object. |
|-------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| И. З. | дѣло, affair. | общество, society. | поле, field. | имя, name. |
| Р. | дѣла, of an affair. | общества, of society. | поля, of a field. | имени, of a name. |
| Д. | дѣлу, to an affair. | обществу, to society. | полю, to a field. | имени, to a name. |
| В. | дѣло, an affair. | общество, society. | поле, a field. | имя, a name. |
| Т. | дѣломъ, with an affair. | обществомъ, by society. | полемъ, with a field. | именемъ, with a name. |
| П. | о дѣлѣ, about an affair. | въ обществѣ, in society. | на полѣ. in a field. | объ имени, about a name. |

Plural Number.

| И. З. | дѣла, affairs. | общества, societies. | поля, fields. | именá, names. |
|-------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| Р. | дѣлъ, of affairs. | обществъ, of societies. | полéй, of fields. | имёнъ, of names. |
| Д. | дѣламъ, to affairs. | обществамъ, to societies. | полáмъ, to fields. | именáмъ, to names. |
| В. | дѣла, affairs. | общества, societies. | поля, fields. | именá, names. |
| Т. | дѣлами, by affairs. | обществами, by societies. | полáми, with fields. | именáми, with names. |
| П. | о дѣлахъ, about affairs. | въ обществахъ, in societies. | въ поляхъ, in fields. | объ именахъ, about names. |

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| | Anim. or Inanim. | Inanimate Object. | Anim. or Inanim. | Inanimate Object. |
|-------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| И. 3. | лицо́, face, or person. | зе́ркало, mirror. | лица́, faces, or persons. | зеркала́, mirrors. |
| Р. | лицá, of a face, &c. | зе́ркала, of a mirror. | лицъ́, of faces, &c. | зеркалъ́, of mirrors. |
| Д. | лицу́, to a face, &c. | зе́ркалу́, to a mirror. | лицамъ́, to faces, &c. | зеркала́мъ, to mirrors. |
| В. | лицо́, a face, &c. | зе́ркало, a mirror. | лица́, faces, &c. | зеркала́, mirrors. |
| Т. | лицо́мъ, by a face, &c. | зе́ркаломъ́, with a mirror. | лицами́, by faces, &c. | зеркала́ми, with mirrors. |
| П. | на лицѣ́, on a face, &c. | въ зе́ркалѣ́, in a mirror. | о лица́хъ, about faces, &c. | въ зерка́лахъ, in mirrors. |

§ 39. Rules for the Declensions.

(1) Nouns substantive, taken from foreign languages, and which end in *ѡ*, *ѣ* and *ѡ*, are declined according to the first declension: *Ex.* сюже́тъ subject, антиквáриѣ antiquary, вѣкселѣ bill of exchange. Those which end in *а* and *я*, and also in *ѡ*, and which are of the feminine gender, are declined according to the second declension: *Ex.* фразá phrase, áрмія army, моделѣ model. Nouns taken from foreign languages, and which terminate in *о*, *е*, *и*, *у*, are not declined at all: *Ex.* депó depot, желе́ jelly, коли́бри humming-bird, какадѣ cockatoo, &c.

(2) The vowel *ѣ* is never found after the letters *г*, *ж*, *к*, *х*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ*: it is changed in such a case into *и*. For this reason the nominative case of the plural number of nouns which end in *ѡ* are not quite according to the ordinary rule. *Ex.* вра́ги enemies (from врагѡ), ножѣ́ knives (from ножѡ), чу́лки stockings (from чуло́кѡ), духѣ́ spirits (from духѡ), ночѣ́ nights (from ночьѡ), шалашѣ́ tents (from шалашѡ), плащѣ́ cloaks (from плащѡ), &c., *instead* of врагѣ́, ножѣ́, чу́лѣ́, &c. In like manner the genitive case of the singular number and the nominative case of the plural number of nouns ending in *а* are—кни́ги books (from кни́га), вельмо́жи grandees (from вельмо́жа), рукѣ́ hands (from рука́), and *not* кни́гы, вельмо́жы, рукѣ́, &c.

(3) After the same letters, too (*г*, *ж*, *к*, *х*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ*, and *ц* also), *я* and *ю* never follow. In place of *я*, *а* must be written, and in place of *ю*, *у*. *Ex.* In the genitive case singular we find се́рдца, and *not* се́рдця (from се́рдце, heart). So, too, in the dative case of the same

word we have *сѣрду*, and *not* *сѣрдиу*. Similarly the dative case of *жи́лище* (dwelling) is *жи́лищу*, and *not* *жи́лищю*.

(4) Nouns substantive which end in *ѣ* are declined after the manner of those which end in *о*, except that the instrumental case of the singular number, instead of *омѣ*, has *ѣмѣ*. *Ex.* *сѣрдцемѣ* (from *сѣрдце* heart), *полотѣнцемѣ* (from *полотѣнце* towel), and the like. Those nouns which terminate in *цо* *accented* have in the instrumental case of the singular number *омѣ*: *Ex.* *яйцѣмѣ* (from *яйцо* egg), *лицѣмѣ* (from *лицо* face, or person).

(5) All words containing the letters *ж*, *ц*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ*, which carry in the instrumental case of the singular number the *accent* (*ударѣніе*) on the last syllable have *омѣ*, and *not* *емѣ*, for the termination of that case. *Ex.* *ножѣмѣ* (from *ножь* knife), *отцѣмѣ* (from *отецѣ* father), &c. Similar words which *do not* carry the accent on the last syllable have *емѣ*, and *not* *омѣ*, for the termination of that case: *Ex.* *мужѣмѣ* (from *мужѣ* man, husband), *мѣсяцемѣ* (from *мѣсяцѣ* month), &c.

(6) In the declensions the letter *ѣ* never follows the letter *и*. Consequently, in the dative and prepositional cases of the singular number of nouns which end in *ія* it is necessary to write *у*, and *not* *ѣ*: *Ex.* *Фрѣнціи*, to France (from *Фрѣнція*); *О лиліи*, about a lily (from *лилія*). The same rule is preserved in the prepositional case, singular number, of nouns which end in *ій* and *іе*. Thus *При Антоніи*, In the time of Anthony (from *Антоній*); *Въ сочинѣніи*, in the composition (from *сочинѣніе*); &c.

(7) Nouns feminine which terminate in *ѣ* also have in the dative and prepositional cases of the singular number *у*, and *not* *ѣ*: *Ex.* *въ Сибѣри*, in Siberia (from *Сибѣръ*), &c.

(8) In nouns masculine which terminate in *ѣ*, the genitive case of the singular number has *я*: *Ex.* *денья* day, *дня*; *зверья* wild beast, *звѣря*. In nouns of a like termination, but of the feminine gender, the termination of the same case of the same number has *у*: *Ex.* *тѣня* shadow, *тѣни*; *дверя* door, *дверу*. To the first part of this rule the following word is the sole exception: *путь* (road), which although of the masculine gender, has for the termination of its genitive case singular *у*, — thus, *пути*. Moreover, this word departs generally from the common rules laid down for the declensions. (*Vide* § 41.)

(9) A few nouns of the masculine gender ending in *ѣ* take, in the

nominative case of the plural number, the termination of the genitive case of the singular number—with this difference, that the accent is shifted to the last syllable: *Ех. вѣксель* bill of exchange, *plur. векселѣ*; *писарь* writer, *plur. писарѣ*, &c.

(10) In nouns substantive which terminate in *ie*, the nominative case of the plural number has *я*, and not *и*: *Ех. желанія* wishes, (from *желаніе*), *not желаніи*, &c. The genitive case of the plural number of these nouns ends in *ій*, and *not* in *евъ*: *Ех. желаній*, and *not желаніевъ*, &c.

(11) Nouns substantive which terminate in *ія* also have in the genitive case of the plural number *ій*: *Ех. лілія* lily, *лілій*, &c.

(12) Nouns substantive which terminate in *ья* have in the genitive case of the plural number *ей*, for which reason the letter *ь* is dropped in the oblique cases: *Ех. судья* judge, *судей*, &c.

(13) Nouns substantive which end in *ея* and *ья* change in the genitive case of the plural number the final letter *я* into *й*: *Ех. швейя* seamstress, *швей*; *змѣя* snake, *змѣй*, &c.

(14) Nouns which end in *ѣ*, and in which the letters *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ* are found, also have in the genitive case of the plural number *ей*: *Ех. пожѣй*, (from *пожѣ*); *мечѣй*, (from *мечѣ*); *шалашѣй*, (from *шалашѣ*); *плащѣй* (from *плащѣ*), &c.

(15) Nouns which end in *ще* have in the genitive case of the plural number *ѣ* for their final termination: *Ех. училище* school, *училищѣ*, &c.

(16) Nouns which terminate in *ко* have in the nominative case of the plural number *и* instead of *а* for their final letter: *Ех. яблоко* apple, *plur. яблоки*; but *войско* army, troops, and *облако* cloud, are exceptions to this rule, as we find *войска* armies, *облака* clouds.

(17) Many material nouns, of the masculine gender, which terminate in *ѣ*, *й*, and *ь*, when placed after words denoting weight or measure, take in the genitive case of the singular number the termination of the dative case of the same number, *i.e.* take the final letters *ю* and *у*, instead of the letters peculiar to their proper terminations, *viz.* *я* and *а*. *Ех. стаканъ чайю* (not *чѣя*), from *чай*, cup of tea; *аршинъ атласу* (not *атласа*), from *атласъ*, arsheen, or Russian ell, of satin, &c. When, however, the same nouns stand after words which do not express measure or weight, then the terminations of their genitive case (singular) are according to the

ordinary rule, *i.e.* in *a* and *я*, and not in *у* and *ю*: *Ех.* вкусъ чая, flavour of tea; нѣжность атласа, softness of satin, &c.

(18) The accusative case, singular number, of nouns of the masculine gender which terminate in *ъ*, *ѣ*, *ь*, is, in the declension of the inanimate and abstract nouns, like the nominative; and, in that of the animate nouns, like the genitive. *Ех.* я вижу¹ (что?) столъ, столы; ручей, ручьи; корабль, корабли—I see (*what?*) table, tables; brook, brooks; ship, ships. Я вижу (кого?) брата, братьевъ; муравья, муравьевъ; звѣря, зверей—I see (*whom* or *what?*) brother, brothers; ant, ants; wild beast, wild beasts. The accusative case, singular number, of nouns of the masculine and feminine genders, which terminate in *a*, is in *у*: *Ех.* слуга, man-servant, слугу; книга book, книгу. Similarly the accusative case, singular number, of nouns of the masculine and feminine genders, which terminate in *я*, is in *ю*: *Ех.* судья judge, судью; пуля bullet, пулю. The accusative case, singular number, of nouns of the feminine gender, which terminate in *ь*, is always like the nominative. The same remark applies too to all nouns of the neuter gender, without any distinction. The accusative case, plural number, of nouns of any gender is, in the declension of the inanimate nouns, like the nominative, and in the declension of the animate nouns, like the genitive.

Obs.—Collective nouns, even though they may denote a collection of animate objects of either the masculine or neuter genders, are declined in the accusative case like the inanimate nouns: *Ех.* Онъ разбилъ² неприятельскій полкъ, He defeated the enemy's regiment; Пастухъ пригналъ³ стадо, The shepherd drove in the flock, &c.

(19) The Vocative is, as a general rule, like the nominative; yet in certain nouns it has a peculiar termination of its own, borrowed from the Church Slavonic tongue: *Ех.* Богъ God, *voc.* Бже; Отецъ Father, *voc.* Оче, &c.

(20) Nouns which terminate in *мя* change *я* in all the oblique cases of both numbers into *е*: *Ех.* время time, времени; временемъ, &c. One word alone with this primary termination of *мя*

¹ Present tense of the verb видѣть. *Trans.*

² Past tense of the verb разбить. *Trans.*

³ Past tense of the verb пригнать. *Trans.*

retains in the genitive case, plural number, the letter *я*: this word is *сѣмя* seed, *сѣмянъ* of seeds.

(21) The words *небо* heaven, and *чудо* miracle, in the cases of the plural number have *ном.* *небеса́*, *чудеса́*; *ген.* *небесѣ*, *чудесѣ*, and so on. But when by the use of the word *чудо* is understood *чудовище* monster, *чудо* forms its plural thus, *чуды*, *чудѣ*, *чудамъ*, &c.

(22) The following nouns and a few others form their genitive case plural like their nominative case singular; in other words, there is no change in form between the two cases: *Ех.* *человѣкъ*, man (or of men); *солдатъ*, soldier (or of soldiers); *драгунъ*, dragoon (or of dragoons); *гусаръ*, hussar (or of hussars); *уланъ*, Uhlan (or of Uhlans); *кадетъ*, cadet (or of cadets); *Турокъ*, Turk (or of Turks); *гренадеръ*, grenadier (or of grenadiers); *рекрутъ*, recruit (or of recruits); *аршинъ*, arsheen (or of arsheens); *пудъ*, pood (or of poods); *чулокъ*, stocking (or of stockings); *сапогъ*, boot (or of boots), and others. Hence it is not correct to speak of *солдатовъ*, *гусаровъ*, *аршиновъ*, *пудовъ*, *чулковъ*, *сапоговъ*, &c. The word *сажень* (a sajen, or Russian fathom) in the genitive case, plural number, has *саженъ*, and not *саженъ* or *саженей*.

(23) Certain nouns, which terminate in *ъ* and *ь*, take in the prepositional case of the singular number *у* or *ю*, instead of *н*. In all such cases the accent falls on the final syllable: *Ех.* на *бокѣ* on the side or flank, from *бокѣ*; въ *лѣсѣ* in the forest, from *лѣсѣ*; въ *раю* in Paradise, from *раю*; &c.

§ 40. The following are some examples of nouns substantive which depart from the ordinary rules of declension:—

(1) Nouns which terminate in *инъ* and *инь* have in the plural number special terminations.

Plural Number.

| <i>(Animate Objects.)</i> | | <i>(Animate Objects.)</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| N. & V. | И. З. Англичане, Englishmen. | Крестьяне, peasants. |
| G. | Р. Англичанъ, of Englishmen. | Крестьянъ, of peasants. |
| D. | Д. Англичанамъ, to Englishmen. | Крестьянамъ, to peasants. |
| A. | В. Англичанъ, Englishmen. | Крестьянъ, peasants. |
| I. | Т. Англичанами, by Englishmen. | Крестьянами, by peasants. |
| P. | П. Объ Англичанахъ, about Englishmen. | О Крестьянахъ, about peasants. |

N.B.—The *singular* number of nouns substantive terminating in *инъ* and *инь* is declined according to the examples given of the first declension (*vide* paragraph 38).

(2) Nouns Substantive terminating in *ёнокъ* are declined in *both* numbers according to the following examples :

Singular Number.

| <i>(Animate Objects.)</i> | | <i>(Animate Objects.)</i> |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| N. & V. | И. З. Телёнокъ, calf. | Волчёнокъ, wolf's cub. |
| G. | Р. Телёнка, of a calf. | Волчёнка, of a wolf's cub. |
| D. | Д. Телёнку, to a calf. | Волчёнку, to a wolf's cub. |
| A. | В. Телёнка, a calf. | Волчёнка, a wolf's cub. |
| I. | Т. Телёнкомъ, by a calf. | Волчёнкомъ, by a wolf's cub. |
| P. | П. О Телёнкѣ, about a calf. | О Волчёнкѣ, about a wolf's cub. |

Plural Number.

| | | |
|---------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| N. & V. | И. З. Теля́та, calves. | Волча́та, wolf's cubs. |
| G. | Р. Теля́тъ, of calves. | Волча́тъ, of wolf's cubs. |
| D. | Д. Теля́тамъ, to calves. | Волча́тамъ, to wolf's cubs. |
| A. | В. Теля́тъ, calves. | Волча́тъ, wolf's cubs. |
| I. | Т. Теля́тами, by calves. | Волча́тами, by wolf's cubs. |
| P. | П. О Теля́тахъ, about calves. | О Волча́тахъ, about wolf's cubs. |

N.B.—According to the above two examples on *ёнокъ* are declined *ребёнокъ* child, infant ; *жеребёнокъ*, foal ; *ягнёнокъ*, lamb ; *котёнокъ*, kitten ; *поросёнокъ*, suckling-pig ; *цыплёнокъ*, chicken ; *медвѣдёнокъ*, bear's cub. But *львёнокъ*, lion's whelp, and *мышёнокъ*, little mouse, respectively make their nominative case plural in *енки* ; thus, *львѣнки* and *мышѣнки*, and *not* *льва́та* and *мыша́та*.

§ 41. The following nouns substantive depart altogether from the ordinary rules of declension :—

Singular Number.

| <i>Animate Objects.</i> | | | <i>Inanimate Objects.</i> | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| И. З. N. & V. | Дитя́, child. | Мать, mother. | Церко́вь, church. | Пу́ть, road. |
| Р. G. | Дитя́ти, of child. | Ма́тери, of a mother. | Цѣркѣи, of a church. | Пути́ of a road. |
| Д. D. | Дитя́ти, to a child. | Ма́тери, to a mother. | Цѣркѣи, to a church, | Пути́, to a road. |
| В. A. | Дитя́, a child. | Мать, a mother. | Церко́вь, a church. | Пу́ть, a road. |
| Т. I. | Дитя́тею, by child. | Ма́терью, by a mother. | Цѣрковью, by a church. | Путѣ́мъ, by a road. |
| П. P. | О дитя́ти, about a child. | О Ма́тери, about a mother. | Въ Цѣркѣи, in a church. | На Пути́, on a road. |

Plural Number.

| | | | | |
|------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Н. З. N. & V. | Дѣти, children. | Матери, mothers. | Церкви, churches. | Пути, roads. |
| Р. G. | Дѣтей, of children. | Матерей, of mothers. | Церквей, of churches. | Путей, of roads. |
| Д. D. | Дѣтямъ, to children. | Матерямъ, to mothers. | Церквамъ, to churches. | Путямъ, to roads. |
| В. A. | Дѣтей, children. | Матерей, mothers. | Церкви, churches. | Пути, roads. |
| Т. I. | Дѣтьми, by children. | Матерями, by mothers. | Церквами, by churches. | Путями, with roads. |
| П. P. | О дѣтяхъ, about children. | О матеряхъ, about mothers. | Въ церквахъ, in churches. | О путяхъ, about roads. |

Obs.—The word *дочѣ* (daughter) is declined like *матѣ*.

| | | |
|-------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| Н. П. | Христѣсъ, Christ. | Господѣ, Lord. |
| Г. Р. | Христѣ, of Christ. | Господѣ, of the Lord. |
| Д. Д. | Христѣ, to Christ. | Господѣ, to the Lord. |
| А. В. | Христѣ, Christ. | Господѣ, the Lord. |
| В. З. | Христѣ! O Christ! | Господи! O Lord! |
| Т. Т. | Христѣмъ, by Christ. | Господомъ, by the Lord. |
| Р. П. | О Христѣ, about Christ. | О Господѣ, about the Lord. |

§ 42. The following words have special inflections both in the genitive case singular, in the other oblique cases of that number, and in all the cases of the plural number:—

(1) By changing the intermediate letter *e* of the nominative case singular into *o* :—

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Ex.</i> Левъ, lion, льва. | Воробѣй, sparrow, воробѣй. |
| Лѣдъ, ice, льда. | Муравѣй, ant, муравѣй. |
| Лѣнь, flax, льна. | Соловѣй, nightingale, соловѣй. |
| Ручѣй, brook, ручѣй. | Жилѣцъ, tenant, жильца. |
| Улѣй, beehive, ульѣй. | Дѣлѣцъ, statesman, дѣльца, &c. |

(2) By changing the intermediate letter *e* of the nominative case singular into *u* :—

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Ex.</i> Наѣмъ, rent, найма, | Перешѣекъ, isthmus, перешѣйка. |
| Заѣмъ, loan, займа. | Боецъ, gladiator, бойца, &c. |

(3) By changing the intermediate letter *a* of the nominative case singular into *u* :—

Ex. Заяцъ, hare, зайца, &c.

(4) By the elision of the letter *e* of the nominative case singular :—

Еж. Молѣбенъ, Те Deum, Молѣбна.
 Пáвелъ, Paul, Пáвла.
 Орѣлъ, eagle, орлá.
 Котѣлъ, kettle, котлá.
 Узелъ, note, узлá.
 Пѣпелъ, ashes, пѣплá.
 Козѣлъ, he-goat, козлá.
 Осѣлъ, jackass, donkey, ослá.
 Купѣцъ, merchant, купцá.
 Отѣцъ, father, отцá.
 Кáмень, stone, кáмня.
 Пень, stump, blockhead, пня.
 День, day, дня.
 Ремѣнь, strap, ремнѣ.

Ковѣръ, carpet, коврá.
 Вѣтеръ, wind, вѣтра.
 Шатѣръ, tent, шатрá.
 Костѣръ, funeral pile, костра.
 Хребѣтъ, spine, or ridge, хребта.
 Егѣпетъ, Egypt, Егѣпта.
 Овѣсь, oats, овсá.
 Пѣсь, dog, пса.
 Агнецъ, lamb, агнца.
 Самодѣржецъ, autocrat, самодержца.
 Стѣбелъ, stalk, стеблá.
 Кáшель, cough, кáшля.
 Сѣлезень, drake, сѣлезня.

(5) By the elision of the letter *o* of the nominative case singular :—

Сонъ, sleep, сна.
 Огонь, fire, огнѣ.
 Псаломъ, psalm, псалмá.
 Уголъ, corner, углá.
 Уголь, charcoal, углá.
 Угоръ, pimple, угрѣ.
 Лобъ, forehead, лба.
 Посолъ, ambassador, послá.
 Чехолъ, cover, чехлá.
 Хохолъ, crest, tuft of hair,
 хохлá.
 Багоръ, harpoon, багрá.
 Бугоръ, hillock, бугрá.

Вѣхоръ, tuft of hair, вѣхра,
 Свѣкоръ, father-in-law, husband's father,
 свѣкра.
 Ротъ, mouth, рта.
 Зáмокъ, castle, зáмка.
 Ноготь, nail, нѣгтя.
 Дѣготъ, tar, pitch, дѣгтя.
 Зовъ, call, invitation, зва.
 Шовъ, seam, шва.
 Учáстокъ, share, учáстка.
 Ломѣтъ, slice, ломтѣ.
 Лѣкотъ, elbow, лѣктя.
 Чулѣкъ, stocking, чулкá.

Also many other words terminating in *окъ*.

§ 43. The following words have special terminations for the nominative case of the plural number :—

ѣко, eye, ѣчи.
 ѣхо, ear, ѣши.
 рукавъ, sleeve, рукавá.
 лѣкаръ, physician, лекарѣ.
 глазъ, eye, глазá.
 боѣринъ, boyard, боѣре.
 бáринъ, gentleman, master, бáре.
 господѣнъ, lord, master, mister,
 господá.

хозяинъ, master of the house, хозяйѣва.
 шу́ринъ, brother-in-law, wife's brother,
 шурѣя.
 братъ, brother, братѣя.
 кумъ, Godfather, a gossip, кумовѣя.
 другъ, friend, друзѣй.
 князь, prince, князѣй.
 солнце, sun, солнца.
 перѣ, pen, перѣя.

The following nouns have two terminations in the nominative case of the plural number :—домъ house, *plur.* домá and домѣ; учитель tutor, *plur.* учителѣ and учители; профессоръ professor,

plur. проѣссорá and проѣссоры. The first of these terminations is in each instance the more frequently used in the language of conversation, and the latter in literature.

The following nouns (and others which by practice can easily be ascertained) have the termination of the nominative case of the plural number in *ья* :—

стулъ, chair, сту́лья; пруть, twig, rod, прутья; сукъ, branch, бough, сучья.

§ 44. The following nouns have in the plural number double terminations, conveying in each instance different meanings :—

| | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| вѣкъ, вѣки, eyelids. | вѣка́, centuries. |
| хлѣбъ, хлѣбы, loaves. | хлѣба́, grain of various kinds. |
| цвѣтъ, цвѣты, flowers. | цвѣта́, colours. |
| зубъ, зѹбы, teeth in the mouth. | зѹбыя, teeth of a comb or of a saw. |
| мѣхъ, мѣхи, pair of bellows. | мѣха́, furs of all kinds. |
| листъ, листы́, leaves of a book, sheets of paper. | листья́, leaves of a tree. |
| мужъ, мужи́, men. | мужья́, husbands. |
| сынъ, сыновья́, sons. | сыны́, sons of the fatherland only. |

In the case of the following words :—

| |
|--|
| дѣрево, tree or wood, дѣрева́, дѣревья́. |
| камень, stone, ка́мни, ка́менья. |
| уголь, charcoal, у́гли, у́голья. |
| ко́рень, root, ко́рни, ко́ренья. |
| крю́къ, hook, crook, крю́ки, крю́чья. |

The latter termination is used in a collective sense only.

колѣно (knee) has for its plural колѣни and колѣна, the last signifying race or generation.

§ 45. The following nouns have special terminations in the genitive case of the plural number :—

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| In <i>сва́</i> , | сва́дба, wedding, | <i>genitive plur.</i> | сва́дебъ. |
| | судба́, fate, destiny, | „ | суде́бъ. |
| | тя́жба, lawsuit, | „ | тя́жебъ. |
| In <i>сѣ</i> , | деньга́, copeck, | „ | дене́гъ. |
| | серьга́, earring, | „ | сере́гъ. |
| In <i>ро́</i> , | ро́зга, rod, | „ | ро́зогъ. |
| In <i>е́к</i> , | ше́йка, finger-board, | „ | ше́екъ. |
| | лю́лька, cradle, | „ | лю́лекъ. |
| | ня́нька, nurse-maid, | „ | ня́некъ. |
| | ло́жка, spoon, | „ | ло́жекъ. |
| | ру́чка, small hand, handle, | „ | ру́чекъ. |
| | коле́чко, ring, link, | „ | коле́чекъ. |
| | око́шко, little window, | „ | око́шекъ. |

And so too have other nouns whose nominative case singular ends in *чко* and *шко*.

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|------------|
| In <i>окъ</i> , | свѣзка, bundle, | <i>gen. plur.</i> | свѣзокъ. |
| | ба́бка, grandmother, midwife. | „ | ба́бокъ. |
| | до́ска, board, plank, | „ | до́сокъ. |
| | па́лка, stick, | „ | па́локъ. |
| In <i>елъ</i> , | метла́, broom, | „ | метѣ́лъ. |
| | сѣ́дло, saddle | „ | сѣ́делъ. |
| | весло́, ear, | „ | вѣ́селъ. |
| | ремесло́, trade, craft, | „ | ремѣ́селъ. |
| | число́, number, | „ | чи́селъ. |
| In <i>алъ</i> , | зе́ркало, mirror, | „ | зерка́лъ. |
| In <i>олъ</i> , | ку́кла, doll, | „ | ку́колъ. |
| | зло, evil, | „ | зо́лъ. |

(This word is used in the genitive case *only* of the plural number.)

| | | | |
|-----------------|--|-------------------|-----------|
| | сте́кло, glass, <i>i.e.</i> pane of glass, and mirror glass, | <i>gen. plur.</i> | сте́колъ. |
| | и́гла, needle, | „ | и́голъ. |
| In <i>елъ</i> , | кро́вля, roof, | „ | кро́вель. |
| | ка́пля, drop, | „ | ка́пель. |
| | са́бля, a sabre, | „ | са́бель. |
| | пе́тля, noose, | „ | петѣ́лъ. |
| | зе́мля, earth, | „ | земѣ́лъ. |
| In <i>емъ</i> , | письмо́, letter, | „ | пи́семъ. |
| | тю́рма, prison, | „ | тю́ремъ. |
| | корчма́, inn, | „ | корче́мъ. |
| | тъма, darkness, | „ | те́мъ. |

(When *тъма* means number. In the Ancient Slavonic reckoning this word signified *ten thousand*.)

| | | | |
|-----------------|---|-----------------------|------------|
| In <i>енъ</i> , | бревнó, beam, | <i>genitive plur.</i> | брѣ́венъ. |
| | сосна́, fir-tree, | „ | со́сенъ. |
| | зернó, grain, kernel, | „ | зе́ренъ. |
| | обѣ́ня, slaughter-house, | „ | обе́нъ. |
| | полотнó, linen, | „ | полóтепъ. |
| | купа́льня, bathing-place, | „ | купа́ленъ. |
| | су́дно, vessel, | „ | су́денъ. |
| | спáльня, bedroom, | „ | спа́ленъ. |
| | грѣ́вна, ten copeck-piece, | „ | грѣ́венъ. |
| | вече́рня, vespers, | „ | вече́ренъ. |
| | Царе́вна, title of the Russian Imperial Princess, | „ | Царе́венъ. |
| | обѣ́дня, Mass, | „ | обе́денъ. |
| | кня́жна, unmarried Princess, | „ | Кня́жѣнъ. |
| | пѣ́сня, song, | „ | пѣ́сенъ. |
| | тамо́жня, custom-house, | „ | тамо́женъ. |
| | ба́сня, tale, a story, | „ | ба́сенъ. |
| | ви́шня, cherry-tree, | „ | ви́шенъ. |
| | ба́шня, tower, | „ | ба́шенъ. |

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------|---|----------------|
| In <i>енѣ</i> , | дерѣвня, village, hamlet, | „ | деревѣнѣ. |
| | рудокѣпня, mine, | „ | рудокѣпенѣ. |
| | хлѣбня, bake-house, | „ | хлѣбенѣ. |
| | камено-лѣмня, quarry, | „ | камено-лѣменѣ. |
| In <i>онѣ</i> , | кѣхня, kitchen, | „ | кѣхонѣ. |
| | окнѣ, window, | „ | окѣнѣ. |
| | сукнѣ, cloth, | „ | сѣконѣ. |
| In <i>ерѣ</i> , | сестрѣ, sister, | „ | сестѣрѣ. |
| | ведрѣ, pail, | „ | вѣдерѣ. |
| | ядрѣ, kernel, | „ | йдерѣ. |
| | ребрѣ, rib, | „ | рѣберѣ. |
| In <i>еуѣ</i> , | полотѣнце, towel, | „ | полотѣнецѣ. |
| | овцѣ, sheep, ewe, | „ | овѣцѣ. |
| | кольцѣ, ring, | „ | колѣцѣ. |
| | сѣрдце, heart, | „ | сердѣцѣ. |
| | крыльцѣ, flight of steps, | „ | крылѣцѣ. |

N.B.—The genitive case, plural, of кѣшанье food, is кѣшаньеѣвъ,
and of помѣстье an estate помѣстїѣй.

§ 46. Nouns which are used in the plural number only are declined, if of the masculine gender, according to the first declension; if of the feminine gender, according to the second declension; and if of the neuter gender, according to the third declension. The gender of such nouns is ascertainable by their nominative and genitive cases :—

(1) Nouns which terminate in the nominative case in *и* or *у*, and in the genitive in *евѣ* or *овѣ*, are of the masculine gender. *Ex.* щипцѣ, pair of tongs, щипцѣѣвъ; тискѣ, press, vice, тискѣѣвъ; обѣи, hangings, tapestry, обѣевѣ. The following is an exception : окѣвы, chains, fetters, окѣѣвъ. This noun is of the feminine gender.

(2) Any other nouns which terminate in the nominative case in *и* or *у*, and in the genitive case in any sort of termination, are all of the feminine gender. *Ex.* санѣи, sledge, санѣѣй; нѣжницѣи, pair of scissors, нѣжницѣ; слѣвки, cream, слѣвокѣ. The following is an exception : лѣди, people, лѣдѣѣй. This noun is of the masculine gender.

(3) Nouns which terminate in the nominative case of the plural number in *а* are of the neuter gender. *Ex.* воротѣ, gate; дрѣвѣ, wood; устѣ, lips, mouth.

Concerning the Declension of Compound Nouns.

§ 47. In compound nouns the last word alone is declined. *Ех.* мореходецъ, navigator, мореходца, мореходцу, &c.

§ 48. Certain proper nouns have their own peculiar appositions : *Ех.* Ричардъ Львиное Сердце, Richard Lion-hearted. In all such instances the proper name only is declined, the noun or nouns in apposition remaining without change : *Ех.* Ричардомъ Львиное Сердце, by Richard Lion-hearted ; О Ричардъ Львиное Сердце, about Richard Lion-hearted.

§ 49. The following compound nouns, which used to be declined separately, are now only inflected in the latter word :—Царьградъ, Tsar's City (name given by the Russians to Constantinople), Царьграда, &c. ; Нѳвгородъ, New City (Novgorod), Нѳвгорода, &c.

§ 50. Nouns substantive, to which is prefixed the word пол or полу (contracted from полови́на, half), have in all the oblique cases полу : *Ех.* полдень mid-day, *gen.* полудня, *dat.* полудню, *ins.* полуднемъ, *prep.* о полуднѣ.

THE NOUN ADJECTIVE (имя прилагательное).

§ 51. Nouns adjective are coupled with nouns substantive, in order to show the quality, attributes, and circumstances of the object. Nouns adjective agree with the substantives with which they are coupled in gender, number and case. *Ех.* храбрый воинъ, brave warrior ; храбрые воины, brave warriors ; храбрыхъ воиновъ, of brave warriors ; бѣлая лошадь, white horse ; золотáя шпáга, golden sword ; здѣшнее общество, local society ; &c.

§ 52. Nouns adjective are comprised under the following heads :—

(1) *Qualifying* (качественное), which denote the quality or property of the several objects with which they are coupled. *Ех.* храбрый, brave ; высóкий, high ; малый, little, small ; &c.

(2) *Possessive* (притяжательное), which point out either to what the object belongs, such as Россійскій Russian, and львиный pertaining to a lion, &c. ; or the substance of which the object is made, or to which it relates—for example, золотóй golden, каменный, of stone.

N.B.—The possessive adjectives are formed from nouns substantive.

(3) *Circumstantial* (обстоятельное), which point to the dependence of the object on the circumstances of time and place. *Ex.* сегоднѣшнѣй урѣкъ, lesson of to-day; вчерашнѣй обѣдѣ, dinner of yesterday; здѣшнее общество, local society; &c.

§ 53. Nouns adjective have seven terminations, viz. for masculine gender, in *ый, ой, ій*; for feminine gender, in *а, я*; for neuter gender, in *о, е*.

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|-------|--------|-------|---------|
| <i>Ex.</i> Masc. славный | } renowned, | худой | } bad, | синий | } blue. |
| Fem. славная | | худая | | синяя | |
| Neut. славное | | худое | | синее | |

§ 54. All nouns adjective are subject to changes of termination in connection with the ordinary rules of declension. The qualifying adjectives are moreover influenced by changes of termination, connected with the use of shortened (у́сѣченны́й) forms, and with the *degrees of comparison* (степень сравненія).

§ 55. The *shortening* (у́сѣченіе) amounts to a contraction of the full termination of the adjective in question. For example, instead of вели́кій -а -о, great, вели́кѣ-а-о are the forms used.

§ 56. Qualifying adjectives have, therefore, for every case and number, two distinct terminations, viz. the *full* (полное) and the *shortened* (у́сѣченное).

§ 57. The possessive and the circumstantial adjectives, on the other hand, have but the one *full* termination. *Ex.*, человѣ́чскі́й -а -о human, бума́жный -а -о made of paper, здѣ́шній -я -е belonging to this place.

Obs.—Certain of the *possessive* adjectives, which are derived from *personal* nouns, may have *two* distinct terminations; such as,—

| | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| The full, or | ца́рскі́й -а́я -о́е | } belonging to the Tsar. | дѣ́довскі́й -а́я -о́е | } belonging to one's ancestors. |
| The shortened, | ца́ре́въ ѣва ѣво | | дѣ́довъ -ова -ово | |
| The full, or | отцо́вскі́й -а́я -о́е | } patrimonial. | братні́й -я́ -е́е | } fraternal. |
| The shortened, | отцо́въ -ова -ово | | братни́нь -нина -нино | |

§ 58. The shortened terminations of adjectives are as follows :—

(1) Of the qualifying adjectives—

| | Singular Number. | | | Plural Number. |
|------------|---|-------|---------|----------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neuter. | All genders. |
| In | ѣ, ѣ. | а, я. | о, е. | ы, и. |
| <i>Ex.</i> | добрѣ kind, добрѣ, добрѣ, добрыѣ; синѣ blue, синѣ, синѣ, синѣ. | | | |

(2) Of the possessive adjectives (derived from personal nouns)—

евѣ, овѣ, инѣ; ева, ова, ина; ево, ово, ино; евы, овы, ины.

Ex. царѣвѣ, царѣва, царѣво, царѣвы;
дѣдовѣ, дѣдова, дѣдово, дѣдовы.
зѣтнинѣ, зѣтнина, зѣтнино, зѣтнины.

§ 59. The degrees of comparison of nouns adjective denote the various standards of the quality or property of an object. *Ex.* умный learned, умнѣе or умнѣйшій more learned, and самый умный most learned; чёрный black, чернѣе or чернѣйшій blacker, and весьма чёрный blackest of all, *lit.* very black; слабый weak, слабѣе or слабѣйшій weaker, and самый слабый weakest. The degrees of comparison are three :—

(1) *Positive* (положительная), which indicates the simple quality or property of an object, without making any comparison between it and any other object which may possess a like quality or property. *Ex.* важный чинѣ important rank; высокая горѣ, high mountain; &c.

(2) *Comparative* (сравнительная), which intimates, in a greater or less degree, the quality or property of one object as compared with one or more objects of the same sort. *Ex.* Вы избрали важнѣйшую должность нежели онѣ, You have chosen a more important duty (or office) than he; Это сукно чернѣе нежели твоѣ, This cloth (is) blacker than thine; Братѣ мой выше тебѣ, My brother (is) taller than thee; &c.

(3) *Superlative* (превосходная), which points out the object possessed of the greatest degree of superiority or inferiority amongst a lot of objects of the same kind. *Ex.* Онѣ читаетъ самую полезную книгу, He is reading a most useful book; Вотъ самое чёрное сукно, Here is the blackest cloth (of all); &c.

§ 60. Nouns Adjective have in the comparative degree two distinct terminations, viz. a full termination in *пѣйшій -ая -ее* and *аѣйшій -ая -ее*, and a shortened termination in *пѣ, пѣй, же, че, ше, ще*. *Ех.* *сильнѣйшій* stronger, *сильнѣе, сильнѣй*; *глубочаѣйшій* deeper, *глубже*; *лѣгче* lighter; *тише* quieter; *сладше* sweeter.

Obs.—The terminations *пѣйшій* and *аѣйшій* may be used to express the superlative degree, but when so employed the words *изъ всехъ*, of all, must be understood. *Ех.* *Россія есть сильнѣйшее государство въ свѣтъ*, Russia is *the most powerful* sovereignty in the world.

§ 61. The superlative degree is formed—

(1) By placing before the full termination of either the positive or comparative degree the words—*самый* most, *пре* very. *Ех.* *Самый пріятный день*, Most pleasant day; *Самая высочаѣйшая гора*, Highest mountain (of all); *Прекрасѣвѣйшій цвѣтокъ*, Prettiest flower.

(2) By placing before the full termination of the positive degree the words *весьма* extremely, *очень* very. *Ех.* *Весьма полезное изобрѣтѣніе*, Extremely useful invention; *Очень пріятная встрѣча*, Very pleasant meeting.

(3) By prefixing to certain adjectives of the comparative degree the particle *най*, very best. *Ех.* *Наилучшій способъ*, very best method; *наиболѣе полезное дѣло*, much the more useful work.

§ 62. For further intensifying the comparative degree the following word can be placed before the *shortened* termination of that degree—*гораздо* much. *Ех.* *Онъ гораздо умнѣе, но гораздо хуже*, He (is) *much* more clever, but *much* worse than, &c.

For the purpose of detracting from the quality of an adjective the particle *по* (little) can be prefixed to the comparative degree of the adjective in question. *Ех.* *Онъ послабнѣе васъ*, He (is) *a little* stronger (than) you; &c.

§ 63. The following nouns adjective have their own peculiar forms of the degrees of comparison:—

| | | Comparative. | | Superlative. |
|--|---|--------------|------------------|--------------|
| | | Full. | Shortened. | |
| великій great, in the sense of famous, | } | большій, | болѣе & больше, | величайшій. |
| большой great, in the sense of large, | | | | |
| малый small, | | меньшій, | мѣнѣе & меньше, | малѣйшій. |
| высокій tall, | | высшій, | выше, | высочайшій. |
| низкій lower, | | низшій, | ниже, | нижайшій. |
| хорошій good, | | лучшій, | лучше, | наилучшій. |
| худой bad, | | худшій, | хуже, | наихудшій. |
| старый old, | | старѣйшій, | старѣе & старше, | старшій. |
| молодой young, | } | nil | молоче, | младшій. |
| долгий long, | | | | |
| короткий short, | } | | короче, | кратчайшій. |
| | | | | |

§ 64. *Qualifying* nouns adjective can be used either in a *depreciative* or *softened* (смягчительный) sense, with either full or shortened terminations; or in an *augmentative* (усиленный) form, with either full or shortened terminations.

Ex.

Depreciative or Softened.

Full termination . . . { бѣленькій домикъ, little white house ;
 { бѣловатый домъ, whitish house ;
 Shortened termination { домъ бѣленокъ, the house (is) a little white ;
 { домъ бѣловать, the house (is) whitish.

Augmentative.

Full termination . . . бѣлѣховскій домъ, very white house ;
 Shortened termination . бѣлѣхонекъ домъ or бѣлѣшенекъ, the house (is) quite white.

§ 65. Certain nouns adjective are used in the sense of *appellative* (нарицательное) nouns substantive. *Ex.* выборный, deputy (*lit.* one chosen); часовой, sentry; гостиная (комната), drawing-room; столовая (комната), dining-room; жаркое, roast meat.

Again, other nouns adjective are converted into surnames, and are used as proper names. *Ex.* Толстой, Tolstói; Задунáйскій, of Trans-Danube; &c.

§ 66. Certain of the qualifying nouns adjective have no degrees of comparison at all; for instance, нѣмой dumb, слѣпой blind, женатый married; and such other adjectives the meaning of which will not admit of an increasing or diminishing of their peculiar significations.

§ 67. To many adjectives which denote quality of a good kind

the particles *не* not, and *без* without, can be prefixed. This process has the effect of giving to the adjectives so treated a contrary signification to that which they previously held. *Ex. Неприятный disagreeable, нечистый unclean, безсильный powerless, &c.*

Obs.—The particle *без*, which is called a preposition, signifies deprivation, or the want of possession of anything, no matter what. Hence many adjectives which primarily indicate bad qualities when joined with this particle or preposition, come to express on the other hand good qualities. *Ex. Безвредный harmless, безопасный safe, &c.*

§ 68. Certain nouns adjective, which are derived from one and the same word, may, according to their meaning, appear in two forms, viz. be either possessive or qualifying adjectives. *Ex. Земной, terrestrial, земляной, earthen, (from земля); землянистый, earthy; золотой, golden, золоти́стый, auriferous, (from золото).*

§ 69. The following is the table of the declensions of nouns adjective with full terminations :—

Singular Number.

| Cases. | Masc. Gender. | Fem. Gender. | Neuter Gender. |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| N. & V. II. 3. | ый, ой, ий, ній. | ая, яя. | ое, ее. |
| G. P. | ого, яго. | ой, ей. | аго, яго. |
| D. Д. | ому, ему. | ой, ей. | ому, ему. |
| A. В. | { аго; яго. ый, ой, ий, ній. } | ую, юю. | { аго, яго. ое, ее. } |
| I. Т. | ымъ, имъ. | ою, ой, ею, ей. | ымъ, имъ. |
| P. II. | омъ, емъ. | ей. | омъ, емъ. |

Plural Number.

| Cases. | Masc. Gender. | Fem. Gender. | Neuter Gender. |
|----------------|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| N. & V. II. 3. | ые, іе. | ья, ія. | ья, ія. |
| G. P. | ыхъ, ихъ. | ыхъ, ихъ. | ыхъ, ихъ. |
| D. Д. | ымъ, имъ. | ымъ, имъ. | ымъ, имъ. |
| A. В. | {ыхъ, ихъ ые, іе. } | {ыхъ, ихъ. ья, ія. } | ые, ія. |
| I. Т. | ыми, ими. | ыми, ими. | ыми, ими. |
| P. II. | ыхъ, ихъ. | ыхъ, ихъ. | ыхъ, ихъ. |

EXAMPLES OF THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

With an Animate Object of the Masculine Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------|---|--|
| И. 3.. N. & V. | сильный орёлъ, powerful eagle. | сильные орлы, powerful eagles. |
| Р. G. | сильнаго орла, of a powerful eagle. | сильныхъ орловъ, of powerful eagles. |
| Д. D. | сильному орлу, to a powerful eagle. | сильнымъ орламъ, to powerful eagles. |
| В. A. | сильнаго орла, powerful eagle. | сильныхъ орловъ, powerful eagles. |
| Т. I. | сильнымъ орломъ, by a powerful eagle. | сильными орлами, by powerful eagles. |
| П. P. | о сильномъ орлѣ, about a powerful eagle. | о сильныхъ орлахъ, about powerful eagles. |

With an Inanimate Object of the Feminine Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------|---|---|
| И. 3.. N. & V. | русская изба, Russian hut. | русскія избы, Russian huts. |
| Р. G. | русской избы, of a Russian hut. | русскихъ избъ, of Russian huts. |
| Д. D. | русской избѣ, to a Russian hut. | русскимъ избамъ, to Russian huts. |
| В. A. | русскую избу, Russian hut. | русскія избы, Russian huts. |
| Т. I. | русскою избой, with a Russian hut. | русскими избами, with Russian huts. |
| П. P. | о, въ русской избѣ, <i>about</i> in a Russian hut. | о, въ русскихъ избахъ, <i>about</i> in Russian huts. |

With an Inanimate Object of the Neuter Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------|--|---|
| И. 3.. N. & V. | прежнее мѣсто, former place. | прежнія мѣста, former places. |
| Р. G. | прежняго мѣста, of a former place. | прежнихъ мѣстъ, of former places. |
| Д. D. | прежнему мѣсту, to a former place. | прежнимъ мѣстамъ, to former places. |
| В. A. | прежнее мѣсто, former place. | прежнія мѣста, former places. |
| Т. I. | прежнимъ мѣстомъ, by a former place. | прежними мѣстами, by former places. |
| П. P. | на прежнемъ мѣстѣ, on a former place. | на прежнихъ мѣстахъ, on former places. |

With an Animate Object of the Masculine Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|------------------|---|---|
| И. З. N. & V. | добрый братъ, kind brother. | добрые братья, kind brothers. |
| Р. G. | добраго брата, of a kind brother. | добрыхъ братьевъ, of kind brothers. |
| Д. D. | доброму брату, to a kind brother. | добрымъ братьямъ, to kind brothers. |
| В. A. | добраго брата, kind brother. | добрыхъ братьевъ, kind brothers. |
| Т. I. | добрымъ братомъ, by a kind brother. | добрыми братьями, by kind brothers. |
| П. Р. | о добромъ братѣ, about a kind brother. | о добрыхъ братьяхъ, about kind brothers. |

With an Animate Object of the Feminine Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|------------------|--|--|
| И. З. N. & V. | добрая сестра, a kind sister. | добрыя сестры, kind sisters. |
| Р. G. | доброю сестры, of a kind sister. | добрыхъ сестеръ, of kind sisters. |
| Д. D. | доброю сестрѣ, to a kind sister. | добрымъ сестрамъ, to kind sisters. |
| В. A. | добрую сестру, kind sister. | добрыхъ сестеръ, kind sisters. |
| Т. I. | доброю сестрою, by a kind sister. | добрыми сестрами, by kind sisters. |
| Р. Р. | о доброй сестрѣ, about a kind sister. | о добрыхъ сестрахъ, about kind sisters. |

With an Inanimate Object of the Neuter Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| И. З. N. & V. | доброе дѣло, kind deed. | добрыя дѣла, kind deeds. |
| Р. G. | добраго дѣла, of a kind deed. | добрыхъ дѣлъ. of kind deeds. |
| Д. D. | доброму дѣлу, to a kind deed. | добрымъ дѣламъ, to kind deeds. |
| В. A. | доброе дѣло, kind deed. | добрыя дѣла, kind deeds. |
| Т. I. | добрымъ дѣломъ, by a kind deed. | добрыми дѣлами, by kind deeds. |
| П. Р. | о добромъ дѣлѣ, about a kind deed. | о добрыхъ дѣлахъ, about kind deeds. |

With an Inanimate Object of the Masculine Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-----------------|--|---|
| И. З. N & V. | простой камень, ordinary stone. | простые камни, ordinary stones. |
| Р. G. | простого камня, of ordinary stone. | простых камней, of ordinary stones. |
| Д. D. | простому камню, to ordinary stone. | простым камнямъ, to ordinary stones. |
| В. A. | простой камень, ordinary stone. | простые камни, ordinary stones. |
| Т. I. | простымъ камнемъ, by ordinary stone. | простыми камнями, by ordinary stones. |
| П. P. | о простомъ камнѣ, about ordinary stone. | о простыхъ камняхъ, about ordinary stones. |

With an Inanimate Object of the Feminine Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-----------------|--|--|
| И. З. N & V. | простая кость, common bone. | простыя кости, common bones. |
| Р. G. | простой кости, of common bone. | простыхъ костей, of common bones. |
| Д. D. | простой кости, to common bone. | простымъ костямъ, to common bones. |
| В. A. | простую кость, common bone. | простыя кости, common bones. |
| Т. I. | простю костью, by common bone. | простыми костями, by common bones. |
| П. P. | о простой кости, about common bone. | о простыхъ костяхъ, about common bones. |

With an Inanimate Object of the Neuter Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|------------------|---|--|
| И. З. N. & V. | простое растѣніе, a common plant. | простыя растѣнія, common plants. |
| Р. G. | простого растѣнія, of a common plant. | простыхъ растѣній, of common plants. |
| Д. D. | простому растѣнію, to a common plant. | простымъ растѣніямъ, to common plants. |
| В. A. | простое растѣніе, a common plant. | простыя растѣнія, common plants. |
| Т. I. | простымъ растѣніемъ, by a common plant. | простыми растѣніями, by common plants. |
| П. P. | о простомъ растѣніи, about a common plant. | о простыхъ растѣніяхъ, about common plants. |

With an Inanimate Object of the Masculine Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| И. З. N. & V. | лѣтній день, summer day. | лѣтніе дни, summer days. |
| Р. G. | лѣтняго дня. of a summer day. | лѣтнихъ дней, of summer days. |
| Д. D. | лѣтнему дню, to a summer day. | лѣтнимъ днямъ, to summer days. |
| В. A. | лѣтній день, summer day. | лѣтніе дни, summer days. |
| Т. I. | лѣтнимъ днёмъ, by a summer day. | лѣтними днями, by summer days. |
| П. P. | о лѣтнемъ днѣ, about a summer day. | о лѣтнихъ дняхъ, about summer days. |

With an Inanimate Object of the Feminine Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|------------------|---|---|
| И. З. N. & V. | лѣтняя ночь, summer night. | лѣтнія ночи, summer nights. |
| Р. G. | лѣтней ночи, of a summer night. | лѣтнихъ ночей, of summer nights. |
| Д. D. | лѣтней ночи, to a summer night. | лѣтнимъ ночамъ, to summer nights. |
| В. A. | лѣтнюю ночь, summer night. | лѣтнія ночи. summer nights. |
| Т. I. | лѣтнею ночью, by a summer night. | лѣтними ночами, by summer nights. |
| П. P. | о лѣтней ночи, about a summer night. | о лѣтнихъ ночахъ, about summer nights. |

With an Inanimate Object of the Neuter Gender.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|------------------|---|--|
| И. З. N. & V. | лѣтнее одѣяло, summer coverlet. | лѣтнія одѣяла, summer coverlets. |
| Р. G. | лѣтняго одѣяла, of a summer coverlet. | лѣтнихъ одѣялъ, of summer coverlets. |
| Д. D. | лѣтнему одѣялу, to a summer coverlet. | лѣтнимъ одѣяламъ, to summer coverlets. |
| В. A. | лѣтнее одѣяло, summer coverlet. | лѣтнія одѣяла, summer coverlets. |
| Т. I. | лѣтнимъ одѣяломъ, with a summer coverlet. | лѣтними одѣялами, with summer coverlets. |
| П. P. | о лѣтнемъ одѣялѣ, about a summer coverlet. | о лѣтнихъ одѣялахъ, about summer coverlets. |

§ 70. Certain Possessive Adjectives which are derived from animate objects, and which terminate in *ій, ѡя, ѡе*, such as *олѣній -ѡя -ѡе*, of a deer, are declined in the following manner:—

Singular Number.

| Cases. | Masc. Termination. | Fem. Termination. | Neuter Termination. |
|-------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| N.&V. П. 3. | олѣній. | олѣнья. | олѣнье. |
| G. Р. | олѣньяго. | олѣньяго. | олѣньяго. |
| D. Д. | олѣньему. | олѣньему. | олѣньему. |
| A. В. | олѣній. | олѣнью. | олѣнье. |
| I. Т. | олѣньимъ. | олѣнью. | олѣньимъ. |
| P. П. | объ олѣньемъ. | объ олѣньей. | объ олѣньемъ. |

Belonging to a deer.

Plural Number.

| Cases. | Masc. Termination. | Fem. Termination. | Neuter Termination. |
|-------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| N.&V. П. 3. | олѣньи. | олѣньи. | олѣньи. |
| G. Р. | олѣньихъ. | олѣньихъ. | олѣньихъ. |
| D. Д. | олѣньи. | олѣньимъ. | олѣньимъ. |
| A. В. | олѣньи. | олѣньи. | олѣньи. |
| I. Т. | олѣньими. | олѣньими. | олѣньими. |
| P. П. | объ олѣньихъ. | объ олѣньихъ. | объ олѣньихъ. |

§ 71. The Possessive Adjective *Божій*, Divine, is declined as below.

| Cases. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | | | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------|-------------------------|-----------|------------|-----------------------|
| | Masculine. | Feminine. | Neuter. | All Gender. |
| N.&V. П. 3. | Божій. | Божія. | Божіе. | Божіи. |
| G. Р. | Божія. | Божіей. | Божія. | Божіихъ. |
| D. Д. | Божію. | Божіей. | Божію. | Божіимъ. |
| A. В. | Божій. | Божію. | Божіе. | Божіи. |
| I. Т. | Божіимъ. | Божіею. | Божіимъ. | Божіими. |
| P. П. | О Божіемъ. | О Божіей. | О Божіемъ. | О Божіихъ. |

§ 72. The following is a table showing the several forms of the shortened terminations of possessive nouns adjective:—

| Cases. | | Singular Number. | | | Plural Number. |
|---------|-------|------------------------|-----------|-----------|----------------------------|
| | | Masculine. | Feminine. | Neuter. | All Genders. |
| N. & V. | Н. З. | ъ, ъ, | а, я, | о, е, | ы, и. |
| G. | Р. | а, я, | ой, ей, | а, я, | ыхъ, ихъ. |
| D. | Д. | у, ю, | ой, ей, | у, ю, | ымъ, имъ. |
| A. | В. | { а, я, } { ъ, ъ, } | у, ю, | о, е, | { ыхъ, ихъ. } { ы, и. } |
| I. | Т. | ымъ, имъ, | ою, ею, | ымъ, имъ, | ыми, ими. |
| P. | П. | омъ, емъ, | ой, ей. | омъ, емъ, | ыхъ, ихъ. |

Examples of the declensions of Nouns Adjective with shortened terminations. Possessive adjectives derived from personal nouns (vide § 58, No. 2).

Singular Number.

| Cases. | Masculine Gender. | Feminine Gender. | Neuter Gender. |
|---------------|----------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| N. & V. Н. З. | отцовъ, | братнина, | сестрино. |
| G. Р. | отцова, | братниной, | сестрина. |
| D. Д. | отцову, | братниной, | сестриниу. |
| A. В. | { отцова, } { отцовъ, } | братнину, | сестрино. |
| I. Т. | отцовымъ, | братниною, | сестринимъ. |
| P. П. | объ отцовомъ, | о братниной, | о сестриномъ. |
| | Of the father. | Of the brother. | Of the sister. |

Plural Number.

| Cases. | Masculine Gender. | Feminine Gender. | Neuter Gender. |
|---------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| N. & V. Н. З. | отцовы, | братнины, | сестрины. |
| G. Р. | отцовыхъ, | братнинныхъ, | сестринныхъ. |
| D. Д. | отцовымъ, | братниннымъ, | сестриннымъ. |
| A. В. | { отцовыхъ, } { отцовы, } | { братнинныхъ, } { братнины, } | { сестринныхъ. } { сестрины. } |
| I. Т. | отцовыми, | братнинными, | сестринными. |
| P. П. | объ отцовыхъ, | о братнинныхъ, | о сестринныхъ. |

Singular Number.

| Cases. | Masculine Gender. | Feminine Gender. | Neuter Gender. |
|---------------|----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| N. & V. Н. З. | Николѣвъ день, | Екатери́нина дѣ́ча, | Цари́цыно село́. |
| G. Р. | Николѣ́ва дня, | Екатери́ниной дѣ́чи, | Цари́цына селѣ́. |
| D. Д. | Николѣ́ну дню́, | Екатери́ниной дѣ́чѣ, | Цари́цыну селѣ́у. |
| A. В. | Николѣ́въ день, | Екатери́нину дѣ́чу, | Цари́цыно село́. |
| I. Т. | Николѣ́ннымъ днѣ́мъ, | Екатери́ниною дѣ́чею, | Цари́цынымъ село́мъ. |
| P. П. | О Николѣ́номъ днѣ́, | въ Екатери́ниной дѣ́чѣ, | о Цари́цыномъ селѣ́. |
| | St. Nicholas's day. | Catherine's country-house. | Tsarína's ¹ village. |

¹ Title of the Russian Empress. *Trans.*

The plural of the three last examples is according to those given in the table above.

Obs.—Qualifying nouns adjective with shortened terminations are inflected only in poetry,

Ex. Тамъ бушѹетъ¹ сѣне мѳре
 There rages the blue sea.
 Я дойдѹ² до сѣня мѳря
 I will go to the blue sea.
 Подивлюся³ сѣнню мѳрю
 I will admire the blue sea.
 Погляжѹ⁴ на сѣне мѳре
 I will gaze on the blue sea.

§ 73. It is especially necessary to observe the following rules for nouns adjective :—

(1) To insure the agreement of nouns adjective with nouns substantive in gender, number and case, the nominative case, plural, of the adjective in question must, if the substantive is of the masculine gender, always terminate in *е*. Similarly, if the substantive is of the feminine or neuter gender, the nominative case, plural, of the adjective will terminate in *я*. *Ex.* Храбрые воины brave warriors, from воинъ; бѣлыя стѣны white walls, from стѣна; сѣнія стекла blue glasses, from стекло.

(2) With regard to the adjective Божій Divine, the nominative case, plural, terminates (for all genders) in *и*. *Ex.* Божіи Храмы God's temples, from храмъ; Божіи Цѣркви God's churches, from цѣрковь; Божіи Созданія God's creatures, from созданіе.

(3) Adjectives derived from animate nouns, and which terminate in *ій*, have in the nominative case of the plural number *и* (for all genders). *Ex.* Оленѣи рога, horns of a deer; медвѣжьи шубы, bearskin coats; птицѣи гнѣзда, birds' nests.

(4) Nouns adjective of the *masculine* gender terminate in *ой* only when the accent lies on the ante-penultimate letter. *Ex.* худой bad, нѣмой dumb, &c. When the accent is *not* on the ante-penultimate letter or syllable, adjectives of the masculine gender terminate in *ый* or *ій*. *Ex.* добрый kind, великій great, &c.

¹ Present tense of бушевать. *Trans.*

² Future tense of дойдѣти. *Trans.*

³ Future tense of подивѣться. *Trans.*

⁴ Future tense of поглядѣть. *Trans.*

(5) Nouns adjective which terminate in *нѣ* have in the genitive case, singular, the termination *ю*, and are declined according to the table of nouns adjective terminating in *нѣ* (*Vide* § 69). *Ex.* *чѣнѣ* blue, &c. All other nouns adjective ending in *нѣ* have in the following cases of the singular number the termination here specified:—In the genitive case *ю*, in the dative *омѣ*, in the instrumental *омѣ*, in the prepositional *омѣ*. In the plural number, however, they are declined like adjectives which terminate in *нѣ*. The following is an instance of this rule:—*высокіѣ* high, &c.

The Noun of Number or Numeral.

(*имя числительное*).

§ 74. The numerals indicate the quantity or number of the objects spoken of. *Ex.* *одѣнѣ* one, *первыѣ* first, *дѣжина* dozen, &c.

§ 75. Numerals are divided into—

(1) *Cardinal* (*количественное*), or those which point out the number of the objects, by answering to the question *Сколько?* How many? *Ans.* *Одѣнѣ* one, *два* two, &c.

(2) *Ordinal* (*порядковое*), or those which determine the sequence or order in which one object shall follow another. The ordinals answer to the question *Котóрыѣ?* Which? *Ans.* *Первыѣ* first, &c.

Table of the Russian Numerals.

| <i>Cardinal.</i> | | | <i>Ordinal.</i> | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------|----|------------------------------|----------------|-------|
| одѣнѣ, <i>masc.</i> | } <i>sing.</i> | 1 | первыѣ, <i>masc.</i> | } <i>sing.</i> | 1st. |
| одна, <i>fem.</i> | | | —ая, <i>fem.</i> | | |
| однó, <i>neut.</i> | | | —ое, <i>neut.</i> | | |
| однѣ, <i>masc. & neut.</i> | } <i>plur.</i> | 1 | —ые, <i>masc.</i> | } <i>plur.</i> | 1st. |
| однѣ, <i>fem.</i> | | | —ыя, <i>fem. & neut.</i> | | |
| два, <i>sing., for all gen.</i> | } | 2 | вторóй -áя -бе, <i>sing.</i> | } | 2nd. |
| двѣ, <i>plur., „ „</i> | | | —ые -быя, <i>plur.</i> | | |
| три, | | 3 | третѣй -ья -ье -и, | | 3rd. |
| четыре, | | 4 | четвёртый -ая -ое -ые -ыя, | | 4th. |
| пять, | | 5 | пѣтый, &c. | | 5th. |
| шесть, | | 6 | шестóй, &c. | | 6th. |
| семь, | | 7 | седьмóй, &c. | | 7th. |
| восемь, | | 8 | восьмóй, &c. | | 8th. |
| дѣять, | | 9 | девѣтый, &c. | | 9th. |
| дѣсьть, | | 10 | дѣсьтый, &c. | | 10th. |
| одѣнадцать, | | 11 | одѣнадцатый, &c. | | 11th. |
| двѣнадцать, | | 12 | двѣнадцатый, &c. | | 12th. |

Cardinal Numbers (continued).

| | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| тринадцать, | 13 |
| четырнадцать, | 14 |
| пятнадцать, | 15 |
| шестнадцать, | 16 |
| семнадцать, | 17 |
| восемнадцать, | 18 |
| девятнадцать, | 19 |
| двадцать, | 20 |
| двадцать-одинъ, &c. | 21, &c. |
| тридцать, | 30 |
| сорокъ, | 40 |
| пятьдесятъ, | 50 |
| шестьдесятъ, | 60 |
| сѣмьдесятъ, | 70 |
| въсѣмьдесятъ, | 80 |
| девѣносто, | 90 |
| сто, | 100 |
| двѣсти, | 200 |
| триста, | 300 |
| четыреста, | 400 |
| пятьсотъ, | 500 |
| шестьсотъ, | 600 |
| семьсотъ, | 700 |
| восемьсотъ, | 800 |
| девѣтсотъ, | 900 |
| тысяча, | 1000 |
| двѣ тысячи, | 2000 |
| дѣсять тысячъ, | 10,000 |
| сто тысячъ, | 100,000 |
| милліонъ, | 1,000,000 |
| два милліона, | 2,000,000 |
| тысяча милліоновъ, | 1000,000,000 |
| (т. е. миліардъ) | (i. e. milliard) |
| блліонъ, | 1,000,000,000 |

Ordinal Numbers (continued).

| | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| тринадцатый, &c. | 13th. |
| четырнадцатый, &c. | 14th. |
| пятнадцатый, &c. | 15th. |
| шестнадцатый, &c. | 16th. |
| семнадцатый, &c. | 17th. |
| восемнадцатый, &c. | 18th. |
| девятнадцатый, &c. | 19th. |
| двадцатый, &c. | 20th. |
| двадцать-первый, &c. | 21st, &c. |
| тридцатый, | 30th. |
| тридцать-первый, &c. | 31st, &c. |
| сороковой, &c. | 40th. |
| сорокъ-первый, &c. | 41st, &c. |
| пятидесятый, | 50th. |
| пятьдесятъ-первый, &c. | 51st, &c. |
| шестидесятый, &c. | 60th. |
| шестьдесятъ-первый, &c. | 61st, &c. |
| семидесятый, | 70th. |
| сѣмьдесятъ-первый, &c. | 71st, &c. |
| въсѣмьдѣсятый, &c. | 80th. |
| въсѣмьдесятъ-первый, &c. | 81st, &c. |
| девѣнобтый, &c. | 90th. |
| девѣносто-первый, &c. | 91st, &c. |
| сотый, &c. | 100th. |
| сто-первый, &c. | 101st, &c. |
| двухъ-сотый, &c. | 200th. |
| двѣсти-первый, &c. | 201st, &c. |
| трѣхъ-сотый, &c. | 300th. |
| триста-первый, &c. | 301st, &c. |
| четырёхъ-сотый, &c. | 400th. |
| четыреста-первый, &c. | 401st, &c. |
| пяти-сотый, &c. | 500th. |
| пятьсотъ-первый, &c. | 501st, &c. |
| шести-сотый, &c. | 600th. |
| шестьсотъ первый, &c. | 601st, &c. |
| семи-сотый, &c. | 700th. |
| семьсотъ первый, &c. | 701st, &c. |
| въсѣмн-сотый, &c. | 800th. |
| въсѣмьсотъ первый, &c. | 801st, &c. |
| девѣти-сотый, &c. | 900th. |
| девѣтсотъ первый, &c. | 901st, &c. |
| тысячный, &c. | 1000th, &c. |
| двухъ-тысячный, &c. | 2000th, &c. |
| десяти-тысячный, &c. | 10,000th, &c. |
| сто-тысячный, &c. | 100,000th, &c. |
| милліонный, &c. | 1,000,000th, &c. |
| двухъ-милліонный, &c. | 2,000,000th, &c. |
| тысяче милліонный, | 1,000,000,000th, &c. |
| блліонный, &c. | 1,000,000,000th, &c. |

Fractional Numerals.

| | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| половина, | $\frac{1}{2}$ |
| треть, | $\frac{1}{3}$ |
| четверть, | $\frac{1}{4}$ |
| осьмѹха or осьмѹшка, | $\frac{1}{8}$ |
| полтора, | $1\frac{1}{2}$ |
| полтретья, | $2\frac{1}{3}$ |
| полчетверта, | $3\frac{1}{4}$ |

Circumstantial Numerals.

| | |
|------------|--------|
| другой, | other. |
| последний, | last. |

Proportional Numerals.

| | |
|--------------------------|------------|
| двойной, | double. |
| тройной, | treble. |
| четверной, | quadruple. |
| стократный or сторичный, | centuple. |

Collective Numerals.

двое, трое, четверо, пятеро,
шестеро, десятеро.

Sets of Two, &c., &c.

пара pair, оба both, двойка two,

трѳйка three, пятѳкъ five, десятѳкъ
ten; дюжина dozen, and пол-дюжины
half dozen; два десятѳка score, сотня
hundred.

§ 76. To the class of cardinals belong—

(1) *Collective* (собира́тельное) numerals, such as пара pair, трѳйка triplet, двое set of two, оба both, дюжина dozen, &c.

(2) *Fractional* (дрѳбное), such as четверть quarter, половина half, полтора one-and-a-half, &c.

§ 77. Numerals, according to their composition, can be either—

(1) *Simple* (простѳе), or such as are formed from one primary word; for instance, два, три, первый, &c.

(2) *Compound* (сложное), or such as are made up of two or more words: двѳ-на́дцать (двѳ-на-деся́тъ) twelve, пять-деся́тъ, fifty; сто-первый, hundred (and) first; &c.

§ 78. The cardinal numerals are declined like nouns substantive, and the ordinal like nouns adjective ending in *ый* and *ой*. Трѳ́тий third, is declined after the manner of nouns adjective terminating in *ий*, which are derived from animate nouns. (*Vide* § 70).

§ 79. The ordinal numeral первый, when used in the sense of лѳ́хший best, or отличнѳ́й excellent, has degrees of comparison—первый, первѳ́йший, са́мый первый.

§ 80. The numerals е́динѳ́й sole, дво́йкѳ́й two-fold, тро́йнѳ́й ternary, and the like, have the meaning of qualifying nouns adjective, and are declined as nouns adjective.

§ 81. The declension of the cardinal numerals is as follows :—

Singular Number.

Plural Number.

| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Masc. & Neut. | Fem. |
|--------|-------------------------|--------------------|-------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| N. II. | одинъ, | одна, | одно. | одни, | однѣ. |
| G. P. | одного, | одной, | одного. | однихъ, | однѣхъ. |
| D. D. | одному, | одной, | одному. | однимъ, | однѣмъ. |
| A. B. | { одного } { одинъ } | одну, | одно. | { однихъ, одни, } | { однѣхъ, однѣ. } |
| I. T. | однимъ, | одной, | однимъ. | одними, | однѣми. |
| P. II. | объ одномъ, | объ одной, one. | объ одномъ. | объ однихъ, | объ однѣхъ. |

| Cases. | Masc. & Neut. | Fem. | All Genders. | |
|--------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| N. II. | два, | двѣ. | три, | четыре. |
| G. P. | двухъ, | двухъ. | трѣхъ, | четырёхъ. |
| D. D. | двумъ, | двумъ. | трёмъ, | четырёхъ. |
| A. B. | { двухъ, два, } | { двухъ, двѣ. } | { трѣхъ, три, } | { четырёхъ, четыре. } |
| I. T. | двумя, | двумя. | тремя, | четырьмя. |
| P. II. | о двухъ, two. | о двухъ. | о трѣхъ, three. | о четырёхъ. four. |

| Cases. | All Genders. | All Genders. | All Genders. | All Genders. |
|--------|------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| N. II. | пять. | вѣсьмъ. | одиннадцать. | сорокъ. |
| G. P. | пяти. | осьми. | одиннадцати. | сорока. |
| D. D. | пяти. | осьми. | одиннадцати. | сорока. |
| A. B. | пять. | вѣсьмъ. | одиннадцать. | сорокъ. |
| I. T. | пятью. | осемью. | одиннадцатью. | сорока. |
| P. II. | о пяти. five. | о восьми. eight. | при одиннадцати. eleven. | о сорока. forty. |

| Cases. | All Genders. | All Genders. | All Genders. | All Genders. |
|--------|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| N. II. | пятьдесятъ. | сто. | двѣсти. | пять-сотъ. |
| G. P. | пятидесяти. | ста. | двухъ-сотъ. | пяти-сотъ. |
| D. D. | пятидесяти. | сту, ста. | двумъ-стамъ. | пяти-стамъ. |
| A. B. | пятьдесятъ. | сто. | двѣсти. | пять-сотъ. |
| I. T. | пятьюдесятью. | ста. | двумя-стами. | пятью-стами. |
| P. II. | о пятидесяти. fifty. | о ста. a hundred. | въ двухъ-стахъ. two hundred. | о пяти-стахъ. five hundred. |

| | | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|--------|--------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Cases. | All Genders. | All Genders. | All Genders. |
| N. II. | ты́сяча, | ты́сячи. | ты́сячи. |
| G. P. | ты́сячи, | ты́сячъ. | ты́сячъ. |
| D. Д. | ты́сячѣ, | ты́сячамъ. | ты́сячамъ. |
| A. В. | ты́сячу, | ты́сячи. | ты́сячи. |
| I. Т. | ты́сячею, | ты́сячами. | ты́сячами. |
| P. II. | о ты́сячѣ, | о ты́сячахъ. | о ты́сячахъ. |

thousand.

Note.—When before the genitive, dative, and prepositional cases of *восьмь*, prepositions terminating with a vowel are used, in place of *осьми* it is usual to write *восьми*. *Ex.* *у восьми ученикоѣхъ*, with eight pupils; *для восьми солда́тѣхъ*, for eight soldiers; *о восьми кни́гахъ*, about eight books.

Obs.—The dative case of the numerals *сорокъ* and *сто*, when used with the preposition *по* up to, terminates in *у*, and not in *а*. *Ex.* *Имъ дали по сту рублѣй*, They gave them 100 roubles *each*.

§ 82. *Шесть* (6), *семь* (7), *девятъ* (9), and *десять* (10), are declined like *пять* (5); *двѣ́на́дцать* (12), *трипа́дцать* (13), *четы́рна́дцать* (14), *пяти́на́дцать* (15), *шести́на́дцать* (16), *семи́на́дцать* (17), *восемна́дцать* (18), *девятна́дцать* (19), *два́дцать* (20) and *три́дцать* (30), like *оди́на́дцать* (11); *шестьдеся́тъ* (60), and *семьдеся́тъ* (70), like *пятьдеся́тъ* (50); *восемьдеся́тъ* (80), like *восьмь* (8) and *десять* (10) joined together; *девяно́сто* (90), like *сто* (100); *три́ста* (300), and *четы́реста* (400), like *двѣ́сти* (200); *шестьсо́тъ* (600), *семьсо́тъ* (700), *восемьсо́тъ* (800), and *девятьсо́тъ* (900), like *пятьсо́тъ* (500).

§ 83. With regard to the declension of the cardinal numerals, it must be observed that, in the instances of *оди́нѣ*, *два*, *три*, *четы́ре*, the accusative case is like the nominative or the genitive, according to whether the noun defined by the numeral in question is animate or inanimate. In the instances, however, of the rest of the cardinal numerals commencing with *пять* five, the accusative case is like the nominative, without distinction as to the nouns being animate or inanimate.

§ 84. *Examples of the Declension of the Collective and Fractional Numerals.*

| Cases. | Masc. & Neut. | Fem. | For all Genders. | |
|--------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| N. II. | оба, | обѣ. | трѣе. | чѣтверо. |
| G. P. | обоихъ, | обѣихъ. | троихъ. | чѣтверыхъ. |
| D. Д. | обоимъ, | обѣимъ. | троимъ. | чѣтверымъ. |
| A. В. | { обоихъ, оба, | { обѣихъ. обѣ. | троихъ. | чѣтверыхъ. |
| I. Т. | обоими, | обѣими. | троими. | чѣтверыми. |
| P. II. | въ обоихъ, both. | при обѣихъ. | о троихъ. set of three. | на чѣтверыхъ. set of four. |

Двое set of two, and обе both, are declined like трѣе; пятеро set of five, шестеро set of six, &c., are declined like чѣтверо.

| Cases. | Masc. and Neut. | Fem. | All Genders. |
|--------|-----------------|---------------|------------------------|
| N. II. | полтора, | полторы, | полтора́ста. |
| G. P. | полу́тора, | полу́торы, | полу́тора́ста. |
| D. Д. | полу́тору, | полу́торѣ, | полу́тора́сту. |
| A. В. | полтора, | полторы, | полтора́ста. |
| I. Т. | полу́торымъ, | полу́торою, | полу́тора́ста. |
| P. II. | о полу́торѣ, | въ полу́торѣ, | о полу́тора́стѣ. |
| | one and a half. | | one hundred and fifty. |

§ 85. In the instances of the compound cardinal numerals, every word is declined, together with the substantive and adjective with which they may be joined:—

| | | |
|--------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| N. II. | три́ста солда́тъ. | семьсо́тъ но́выхъ кни́гъ. |
| G. P. | трѣ́хъ сотѣ́ солда́тъ. | семисо́тъ но́выхъ кни́гъ. |
| D. Д. | трѣ́мъ ста́мъ солда́тамъ. | семиста́мъ но́вымъ кни́гамъ. |
| A. В. | три́ста солда́тъ. | семьсо́тъ но́выхъ кни́гъ. |
| I. Т. | тре́мъ ста́ми солда́тами | се́мьюста́ми но́выми кни́гами. |
| P. II. | о трѣ́хъ ста́хъ солда́тахъ. | о семиста́хъ но́выхъ кни́гахъ. |
| | three hundred soldiers. | seven hundred new books. |

| | |
|--------|---|
| N. II. | четы́реста два́дцать оди́нъ рубль. |
| G. P. | четы́рехъсо́тъ два́дцати́ одно́го рубля́. |
| D. Д. | четы́ремъста́мъ два́дцати́ одно́му рублю́. |
| A. В. | четы́реста два́дцать оди́нъ рубль. |
| I. Т. | четы́рьмяста́ми два́дцати́ю оди́нмъ рублѣ́мъ. |
| P. II. | о четы́рехъста́хъ два́дцати́ оди́нмъ рублѣ́. |
| | four hundred and twenty-one roubles. |

| | |
|--------|--|
| N. II. | ты́сяча во́семь сотъ три́дцать ше́сть рублёй, |
| G. P. | ты́сячи осьми́ сотъ три́дцати́ шести́ рублѣй, |
| D. D. | ты́сячѣ осьми́ ста́мъ три́дцати́ шести́ рублѣмъ, |
| A. B. | ты́сячу во́семь сотъ три́дцать ше́сть рублѣй, |
| I. T. | ты́сячею во́семью ста́ми три́дцати́ ше́стью рублѣми, |
| P. II. | о ты́сячѣ осьми́ ста́хъ три́дцати́ шести́ рублѣхъ, one thousand eight hundred and thirty-six roubles. |

§ 86. The last word of the compound ordinal numerals is alone declined with the substantive and the adjective joined thereto.

| | |
|------------|---|
| Ex. N. II. | ты́сяча во́семь сотъ три́дцать ше́стой годъ. |
| G. P. | ” ” ” ” ше́стаго го́да. |
| D. D. | ” ” ” ” ше́стому го́ду. |
| A. B. | ” ” ” ” ше́стой годъ. |
| I. T. | ” ” ” ” ше́стымъ го́домъ. |
| P. II. | ” ” ” ” ше́стымъ го́дѣ. |
| | the one thousand eight hundred and thirty-sixth year. |

§ 87. Ordinal numerals, like nouns adjective, terminate in *ой* only when the accent falls on the ante-penultimate letter. *Ex.* *второ́й*, second; *шесто́й*, sixth; *восьмо́й*, eighth; &c.

§ 88. When the *collective* and *fractional* numerals are declined with nouns substantive, the numeral in question is alone subject to inflection, the substantive remaining in the *genitive* case.

| | | | |
|------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Ex. N. II. | деся́токъ грушъ, | па́ра лошаде́й, | че́тверть листа́. |
| G. P. | деся́тка грушъ, | па́ры лошаде́й, | че́тверти листа́. |
| D. D. | деся́тку грушъ, | па́рѣ лошаде́й, | че́тверти листа́. |
| A. B. | деся́токъ грушъ, | па́ру лошаде́й, | че́тверть листа́. |
| I. T. | деся́ткомъ грушъ, | па́рою лошаде́й, | че́твертью листа́. |
| P. II. | о деся́ткѣ грушъ, | о па́рѣ лошаде́й, | о че́тверти листа́. |
| | set of ten pears, | pair of horses, | leaf of paper, |
| | from гру́ша. | from лоша́дь. | from листь, &c. |

THE PRONOUN (Мѣстоимѣніе).

§ 89. The pronoun is used in place of a noun.

§ 90. Pronouns are—

(1) *Personal* (лѣчное): *Ex.* of first person, *Я* I, *мы* we; of second person, *ты* thou, *вы* you; of third person, *онъ* he, *она́* she, *оно́* it; *они́* they (*masc. and neut. genders*), *они́ѣ* they (*fem. gender*). *Ex.* *Я пишу́*,¹ I am writing; *ты́ о́чень приле́женъ*,² thou (art) very diligent; *онъ до́брый това́рищъ*, *he* (is) a good comrade; *они́ у́ехали*,³ they went away.

¹ Present tense of *писать*. *Trans.* ² Shortened form of *прилежный*. *Trans.*

³ Past tense of *у́хать*. *Trans.*

(2) *Reflective* (возвратное), or those which show that the person or persons, or thing or things, perform an action which is reflected back to the agent or agents. There is in the Russian language but one such pronoun for both numbers and all genders. This is себя, self. *Ех. Онъ отказываетъ себя въ пищу, He denies himself food; Ты доволенъ собою, Thou (art) satisfied with thyself; Они о себѣ не заботятся, They do not take care of themselves.*

(3) *Demonstrative* (указательное), or those which serve to indicate any kind of object; such as, сей, сія, сіе, сию, this, these; этотъ -а -о -у, this, these; тотъ -а -о -у, that, those; одинъ -ая -ое -ые -ья this one, that one, or the said; такой -ая -ое -ые -ья such a one, &c. *Ех. Этотъ домъ красивъ, а тотъ безобразенъ, This house (is) pretty, but that one (is) ugly.*

(4) *Possessive* (притяжательное), or those which denote to which of the three persons an object belongs; such as мой -я -ѣ -ю, my, or mine; твой -я -ѣ -ю, thy or thine; его, his or its (*lit.* of him or of it); свой -я -ѣ -ю, his, her, its or their own; нашъ -а -е -у, our, ours; вашъ -а -е -у, your, yours; ихъ, their or theirs (*lit.* of them). *Ех. вотъ мой столъ, ваша книга, твоё перо, Here (is) my table, your book, thy pen.*

(5) *Relative* (относительное), or those which are used in place of nouns; and which form a connection between the person or persons speaking and the object or objects about which they speak; such as, который -ая -ое, who, which, what; кой -оя -ое, who, which, what; кто, who; что, what; чей -ья -ѣ -ьи, whose; какой -ая -ое, what sort of. *Ех. Я купилъ книгу которую давно желалъ имѣть, I have bought a book, which I have long wished to have.*

(6) *Interrogative* (вопросительное), or those which, in form, are the same as the relative pronouns, and which by means of questions endeavour to ascertain to whom or to what an object belongs. *Ех. Который часъ? What o'clock (is it)? Кто пришёлъ? Who has come? Чей домъ? Whose house (is) it?*

(7) *Definite* (опредѣлительное), or those which point with preciseness to the person or object spoken of; such as, самъ -а -о -у; самый -ая -ое -ые -ья, the same, the very same; весь, вся, всё, все, the whole, all; каждый -ая -ое -ые -ья, each one, every one. *Ех. Онъ самъ былъ тамъ, He himself was there; Я видѣлъ эту самую книгу, I saw this same book.*

(8) *Indefinite* (неопредѣлённое), or those which speak somewhat uncertainly of a person or thing; such as, *нѣкто*, somebody; *нѣчто*, something; *нѣкоторый -ая -ое -ые -ья*, someone, a certain one; *никто́*, nobody; *ничто́*, nothing; *кто́*, any one; *кое-что́*, something; *иной́ -ая́ -ое́ -ые́ -ья́*, another; *кто-либо*, somebody or other; *что либо*, something or other; *кто-ни-будь*, somebody or other; *что-ни-будь*, something or other. *Ex.* Въ нѣкоторомъ городѣ были различныя злоупотребленія, In a *certain* city there were abuses of various kinds; Онъ написалъ кое-что новое, He wrote *something* new.

To the class of indefinite pronouns belongs the word *нѣсколькѣй -ая -ое -ые -ья*, some, a few. This word is used, however, only in the oblique cases of the plural number. *Ex.* нѣсколькихъ, нѣсколькимъ, нѣсколькими, о нѣсколькихъ.

Obs.—The pronoun *всякій -ая -ое -ые -ья* every one, all, is a *definite* pronoun when used in the sense of *каждый -ая -ое -ые -ья*, each one. *Ex.* Всякій (или каждый) обязанъ трудиться, *Each one* (is) obliged to labour. And it is an *indefinite* pronoun when used in the sense conveyed in the following sentence: Здѣсь ро́дится всякаго́ рода́ хлѣбъ, Corn of *every* kind grows here.

The cardinal numeral *одинъ*, one, a, an, has sometimes the meaning of an indefinite pronoun. *Ex.* Одинъ мой пріятель отпра-вился въ Лондонъ, A (*certain*) friend of mine has set out for London. In this sentence *одинъ* stands for *нѣкоторый* or *нѣкто*.

§ 91. Some of the pronouns are declined as substantives, and others as adjectives. The pronouns declined as substantives are the following:—the personal, *я, ты, мы, вы, онъ, она́, оно́, онѣ́, онѣ́*; the reflective, *себя́*; some of the relative or interrogative, such as *кто, что*; and the indefinite, *никто́, ничто́, нѣкто, нѣчто*. All the others, which have for each gender a special termination, are declined as adjectives.

§ 92. Declension of the Pronouns.

(1) Pronouns declined like substantives:—

Singular Number.

| Cases. | All Genders. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
|--------|--------------------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| N. II. | Я I, Ты thou. | онъ he. | она́ she. | оно́ it. |
| G. P. | меня́, тебя́, | его́, | ея́, | его́. |
| D. D. | мнѣ́, тебѣ́, | ему́, | ей, | ему́. |
| A. B. | меня́, тебя́. | его́, | её́, | его́. |
| I. T. | мнѣ́ю, тобѣ́ю, | имѣ́, | ею́, | имѣ́. |
| P. II. | обо мнѣ́ за тебѣ́, | о нёмъ́, | при ней, | въ нёмъ́. |

Plural Number.

| Cases. | All Genders. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
|--------|------------------|------------|------------|------------|
| N. П. | Мы we, Вы you. | они́ they. | онѣ́ they. | они́ they. |
| G. Р. | насъ, васъ, | ихъ, | ихъ, | ихъ. |
| D. Д. | намъ, вамъ, | имъ, | имъ, | имъ. |
| A. В. | насъ, васъ, | ихъ, | ихъ. | ихъ. |
| I. Т. | нами, вами, | ими, | ими, | ими. |
| P. П. | о насъ, на васъ, | о нихъ, | о нихъ, | въ нихъ. |

Obs.—With regard to the declension of the pronouns of the third person онѣ́, онѣ́, онѣ́, онѣ́, онѣ́, it is necessary, when prepositions are used with the oblique cases of such pronouns, to prefix the letter *н* to the case in question; thus, У него́ мой ножъ, *He has my knife*; Я иду́ къ нему́, къ ней, съ нимъ съ нею, съ ними, *I go to him, to her, with him, with her, with them*. But if the genitive case of this pronoun, both singular and plural, is used in the sense of a *possessive* pronoun, then the letter *н* is *not* prefixed. *Ex.* Я былъ у ея́ пріятеля, у ея́ брата, и у ихъ сестры, *I was at his friend's, at her brother's, and their sister's*.

The following are declined in one number only :—

| | | | | | |
|-------|-----------------|----------|-----------------|------------|------------------|
| N. П. | <i>nil</i> | кто who? | никто́, no one. | что, what. | ничто́, nothing. |
| G. Р. | себя́, of self. | кого́, | никого́, | чего́, | ничего́. |
| D. Д. | себѣ́, | кому́, | никому́, | чему́, | ничему́. |
| A. В. | себя́, | кого́, | никого́, | что, | ничто́. |
| I. Т. | собобо́, | къмъ́, | никѣ́мъ, | чѣ́мъ, | ничѣ́мъ. |
| P. П. | о себѣ́, | о комъ́, | ни о ко́мъ, | о чѣ́мъ, | ни о чѣ́мъ. |

Кое-кто́, кто-ли́бо, кто-нибу́дь are declined like кто́; and кое-что́, что-ли́бо, что-нибу́дь, like что́.

(2) Pronouns declined like adjectives :—

| <i>Singular Number.</i> | | | | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------------|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | All Genders. |
| N. П. | мо́й, my, mine. | мо́я, | моё́. | мои́. |
| G. Р. | моего́, | моё́й, | моего́. | мои́хъ. |
| D. Д. | моему́, | моё́й, | моему́. | мои́мъ. |
| A. В. | { моего́, } мо́й, | мою́, | моё́. | { мои́хъ. } мои́. |
| I. Т. | мои́мъ, | моё́ю, | мои́мъ. | мои́ми. |
| P. П. | о моёмъ́, | о моё́й, | о моёмъ́. | о мои́хъ. |

Тво́й -я́ -ё -и́, thy, thine, theirs, their; свой -я́ -ё -и́, his, her, its, their own, are declined like мо́й -я́ -ё -и́.

| <i>Singular Number.</i> | | | | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------------|------------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------------|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | All Genders. |
| N. II. | нашъ, our, ours, | наша, | наше. | наши. |
| G. P. | нашего, | нашей, | нашего. | нашихъ. |
| D. Д. | нашему, | нашей, | нашему. | нашимъ. |
| A. В. | { нашего, } нашъ, } | нашу, | наше. | { нашихъ. наши. |
| I. Т. | нашимъ, | нашею, | нашимъ. | нашими. |
| P. II. | о нашемъ, | о нашей, | о нашемъ. | о нашихъ. |

Вашъ, -а, -е, -и, is declined like нашъ, -а, -е -и.

| <i>Singular Number.</i> | | | | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|--------|---------|-----------------------|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | All Genders. |
| N. II. | сей, this, | сіа, | сіе. | hese. |
| G. P. | сего, | сей, | сего. | сихъ. |
| D. Д. | сему, | сей, | сему. | симъ. |
| A. В. | { сего, } сей, } | сію, | сіе. | { сихъ. сіи. |
| I. Т. | симъ, | сёю, | симъ. | сіими. |
| P. II. | о сёмъ, | о сей, | о сёмъ. | о сихъ. |

| <i>Singular Number.</i> | | | | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------------|--------|---------|-----------------------|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | All Genders. |
| N. II. | тотъ, that, | та, | то. | тѣ, those. |
| G. P. | того, | той, | того. | тѣхъ. |
| D. Д. | тому, | той, | тому. | тѣмъ. |
| A. В. | { того, } тотъ, } | ту, | то. | { тѣхъ. тѣ. |
| I. Т. | тѣмъ, | тою, | тѣмъ. | тѣми. |
| P. II. | о томъ, | о той, | о томъ. | о тѣхъ. |

| <i>Singular Number.</i> | | | | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------|------------|-----------------------|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | All Genders. |
| N. II. | этотъ, this, | эта, | это. | ѣти. |
| G. P. | этого, | этой, | этого. | ѣтихъ. |
| D. Д. | этому, | этой, | этому. | ѣтимъ. |
| A. В. | { этого, } этотъ, } | ѣту, | это. | { ѣтихъ. ѣти. |
| I. Т. | ѣтимъ, | ѣтою, | ѣтимъ. | ѣтими. |
| P. II. | объ этомъ, | объ этой, | объ этомъ. | объ ѣтихъ. |

| <i>Singular Number.</i> | | | | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------------|--|-------------|--------------|---|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Mas.Fem.& Neut. |
| N. II. | о́ный, this or that one, the said, | о́ная, | о́ное. | о́ные, о́ныя. these or those, the said. |
| G. P. | о́наго, | о́ной, | о́наго. | о́ныхъ. |
| D. Д. | о́ному, | о́ной, | о́ному. | о́нымъ. |
| A. В. | { о́наго, о́ный, } | о́ную, | о́ное. | { о́ныхъ. о́ные, о́ныя. |
| I. Т. | о́нымъ, | о́ною, | о́нымъ. | о́ными. |
| P. П. | о́бъ о́номъ, | о́бъ о́ной, | о́бъ о́номъ. | о́бъ о́ныхъ. |

| <i>Singular Number.</i> | | | | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------------|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | All Genders. |
| N. II. | чей, whose, | чья, | чье. | чьи. |
| G. P. | чье́го, | чье́й, | чье́го. | чьи́хъ. |
| D. Д. | чье́му, | чье́й, | чье́му. | чьи́мъ. |
| A. В. | { чье́го, чей, } | чью, | чье́. | { чьи́хъ. чьи. |
| I. Т. | чьи́мъ, | чье́ю, | чьи́мъ. | чьи́ми. |
| P. П. | о чье́мъ, | о чье́й, | о чье́мъ. | о чьи́хъ. |

| <i>Singular Number.</i> | | | | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Mas.Fem.& Neut. |
| N. II. | како́й, what sort, | кака́я. | како́е. | какі́е, какі́я. |
| G. P. | како́го, | како́й, | како́го. | какі́хъ. |
| D. Д. | како́му, | како́й, | како́му. | какі́мъ. |
| A. В. | { како́го, како́й, } | како́ю, | како́е. | { какі́хъ. какі́е, какі́я. |
| I. Т. | какі́мъ, | како́ю, | какі́мъ. | какі́ми. |
| P. П. | въ како́мъ, | въ како́й, | въ како́мъ. | въ какі́хъ. |

Тако́й, а́я, о́е, і́е, і́я, are declined in the same manner.

| <i>Singular Number.</i> | | | | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------------------|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | All Genders. |
| N. II. | самъ, alone, | сама́, | само́. | са́ми. |
| G. P. | само́го, | самой, | само́го. | самі́хъ. |
| D. Д. | само́му, | самой, | само́му. | самі́мъ. |
| A. В. | { само́го, самъ, } | { самую́, самое́, } | само́. | { самі́хъ. са́ми. |
| I. Т. | самі́мъ, | самое́ю, | самі́мъ. | самі́ми. |
| P. П. | о само́мъ, | о само́й, | о само́мъ. | о самі́хъ. |

| Singular Number. | | | | Plural Number. |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|----------|-----------|--|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Mas.Fem.&Neut. |
| N. II. | самый, the very, the self same. | самая, | самое. | самые, самыя, these or those very, the self same. |
| G. P. | самаго, | самой, | самаго. | самыхъ. |
| D. Д. | самому, | самой, | самому. | самымъ. |
| A. В. | { самаго, } { самый, } | самую, | самое. | { самыхъ. { самые, самыя. |
| I. Т. | самымъ, | самою, | самымъ. | самыми. |
| P. II. | о самомъ, | о самой, | о самомъ. | о самыхъ. |

| Singular Number. | | | | Plural Number. |
|------------------|--------------------------|----------|------------|--------------------|
| Cases. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | All Genders. |
| N. II. | весь, all, the whole. | всѣя, | всѣ. | всѣ. |
| G. P. | всего́, | всей, | всего́. | всѣхъ. |
| D. Д. | всемѹ, | всей, | всемѹ. | всѣмъ. |
| A. В. | { всего́, } { весь, } | всю, | всѣ. | { всѣхъ. { всѣ. |
| I. Т. | всѣмъ, | всѣю, | всѣмъ. | всѣми. |
| P. II. | обо всѣмъ, | на всей, | при всѣмъ. | во всѣхъ. |

The pronoun *нѣкто* is used only in the nominative case, and *нѣчто* only in the nominative and accusative cases. *Ex.* *Нѣкто* ко мнѣ приходѣлъ, *somebody* came to me ; *Я* скажѹ вамъ *нѣчто* новое, I will tell you *something* new. For the other cases of these two pronouns the oblique cases of *кто-то* and *что-то* are substituted. *Ex.* *Кого́-то* нѣтъ, *Some one* (is) wanting ; *кому́-то* скѹчно, *some one* (is) dull ; *чего́-то* не достаетъ, *something* is not obtainable ; *чѣмъ-то* его́ награди́тъ, they will reward him *with something*. All the other pronouns are declined like adjectives with full terminations.

THE VERB (Глаго́лъ).

§ 93. A Verb denotes the action or condition of an object. *Ex.* *Хвалѣть*, to praise ; *хвалѣться*, to praise one's self, to boast ; *быть* *хвалѣму*, to be praised, &c.

§ 94. Verbs are divided, according to their signification, into the following *Voices* (Зало́гъ) :—

(1) *Active* (дѣйстви́тельный), which denotes an action that passes from the agent to the object. Now, as the greater part of verbs of the *active* voice require the accusative case, their class can be

ascertained by the questions *Коио? Whom? Чмо? What?* *Ex.* Я хв́а́лю (*Коио?*)? I praise (*whom?*)? *Ans.* Бра́та, Brother. Я чита́ю Чмо? I am reading (*what?*)? *Ans.* Кни́гу, a book.

(2) *Neuter* (сре́дний), which, being the opposite of the active voice, denotes some kind of condition or action that does *not* pass from the agent to any object, but which is complete in itself. *Ex.* Идти́, to go (*once*); ходи́ть, to go (*more than once*); спати́, to sleep; вѣхати́, to drive; пла́кати́, to weep.

Obs.—(1) The verbs *быти́*, to be, and *стати́*, to become, to begin, which are of the neuter voice, are called *Auxiliary* (вспомога́тельный) *Verbs*, because they assist in forming the tenses of other verbs. *Ex.* Я бу́ду чита́ть, I will read; Ты бы́лъ награжде́нъ, Thou wast rewarded; Онъ ста́лъ писа́ть, He began to write. The verb *быти́* when used separately stands in the place of the verbs *существова́ть*, to be, to exist, and *находи́ться*, to find oneself, to exist, to be. *Ex.* У него́ е́сть кни́ги, He has books, *lit.* (there) are books with him; Я бы́лъ у бра́та, I was at (my) brother's. The verb *быти́* is in such instances called a *Substantive Verb* (существи́тельный глаго́л).

Obs.—(2) *All Verbs* which give expression to the call or cry of the several four-footed animals or of birds are of the *neuter voice*. *Ex.* Левъ ры́каетъ, the lion roars, from ры́кать; медвѣ́дь реве́тъ, the bear growls, from реве́ть; соба́ка и лиси́ца лаю́тъ, the dog and the fox bark, from ла́ять; воро́на ка́ркаетъ, the crow caws, from ка́ркать; со́рока ще́бе́етъ, the magpie chatters, from ще́бетать; ло́шадь рже́тъ, the horse neighs, from ржа́ть; волкъ во́етъ, the wolf howls, from вы́ть; бы́къ и коро́ва мыча́тъ, the bull (or ox) and the cow low, from мыча́ть; овца́ бле́етъ, the sheep bleats, from бле́ять; ко́шка мяу́каетъ, the cat mews, from мяу́кать; сви́нья хрю́каетъ, the pig grunts, from хрю́кать; го́лубь ворку́етъ, the pigeon coos, from ворковáть; ку́рица кло́куетъ, the hen clucks, from клохтáть; лягу́шка ква́каетъ, the frog croaks, from ква́кать; стрекоза́ и пче́ла жу́жатъ, the dragon-fly and the bee buzz, from жу́жать.

(3) *Reflective* (возвра́тный), which indicates an action that is reflected back from the object to the agent. The reflective verbs of the Russian language are formed by the union of a verb of the active voice with a contracted form of the reflective pronoun

себя́ (ся). *Ех.* хвалѣ́ться = хвалѣть себя́, to praise one's self; мы́ться = мыть себя́, to wash one's self.

(4) *Reciprocal* (взаѣмный), which denotes a reciprocal action between the agent and the object or objects. Verbs of this voice also terminate in *ся*. They answer, moreover, to the questions—Съ кѣмъ? *With whom?* *Ех.* ссорѣ́ться, to quarrel; сража́ться, to fight; &c.

Obs.—There are some verbs without the suffix *ся* that have the meaning of verbs of the reciprocal voice. *Ех.* спорѣ́ть, to dispute; игра́ть, to play. All such answer to the question, Съ кѣмъ? *With whom?*

(5) *Common* (общій). These likewise terminate in *ся*, and without the particle they are not used. They have the meaning of verbs of either the active or neuter voice. *Ех.* боя́ться, to fear, to be afraid of; когó? чегó? *of whom? of what?* повиновáться, to be obedient to; комý? чемý? *to whom? to what?* надѣ́яться, to rely on; на когó, на что? *on whom? on what?* трудѣ́ться; to labour; надъ чѣмъ? *at what?* (The above have the meaning of verbs of the active voice.) Улыба́ться, to smile; очутѣ́ться, to appear; and лѣнѣ́ться, to be lazy; have the meaning of verbs of the neuter voice.

(6) *Passive* (страдательный), which betokens the *condition* of one object with the *action* of another. *Ех.* быть любѣ́му, to be loved, &c. Verbs of the passive voice are formed by joining an active verb with various parts of the auxiliary verb *быть*. They answer to the questions, кѣмъ? чѣмъ? *by whom? by what?* Sometimes verbs of the passive voice terminate in *ся*. *Ех.* почи́таться, to be respected, &c.

§ 95. Certain verbs, according to the meaning which they convey, are of various voices. *Ех.* *Active Verb*—Онъ игра́етъ на скрипкѣ́ но́вую пѣ́сню, He is playing a new song on the violin. *Neuter Verb*—Онъ не учѣ́тся, а игра́етъ, He does not study, but plays. *Reciprocal Verb*—Я бѣ́лся съ нимъ на рапирахъ, I fenced with him (*lit.* fought with rapiers with him). *Reflective Verb*—Я долго трудѣ́лся надъ этою задачею, I laboured for a long time over this

problem ; &c. *Verbs of the Neuter Voice* before which certain prepositions are placed become *Verbs of the Active Voice* :—

Ex.: *Neuter Verb*, и́дти, to go ; *Active Verb*, переи́дти, to go across.
 „ „ ходи́ть, to go ; „ „ обходи́ть, to go round.
 „ „ спатъ, to sleep ; „ „ проспáть, to oversleep.

§ 96. The properties of Russian verbs which render them liable to changes of termination are—*mood* (наклонѣнiе), *tense* (врѣмя), *aspect* (видъ), *person* (лицо́), *number* (число́), *gender* (родъ), *participle* (прича́стiе), *gerund* (дѣеприча́стiе).

§ 97. The mood gives expression to various forms of action or of condition, either in the person or agent.

§ 98. Russian verbs have three moods :—

(1) *Infinitive* (Неопредѣлённое), which does not show *by whom* or *when* the action was performed ; *i. e.* which does not point out the time, or number and gender of the person or persons, at which, and by whom, the action was performed. *Ex.* пи́сать, to write ; сража́ться, to fight ; &c.

(2) *Indicative* (Изъявительное), which shows *by whom* and *when* the action was performed—which shows, in fact, the time and number, and even the gender, of the person or persons, at which, and by whom, the action was performed. *Ex.* Я пишу́, I am writing ; ты сража́лся, thou foughtest ; она́ игра́ла, she played ; &c.

(3) *Imperative* (Повелительное), which conveys an order, wish, or prohibition, for or against a thing being done. *Ex.* пиши́, write (thou) ; пусть онъ дѣлаетъ, let him do (it) ; не сража́йтесь, do not (you) fight ; &c.

Obs.—In order to express by means of a Russian verb the *subjunctive* (сослагательное), or *conditional* (условное), *mood*, which is in use in foreign languages, the conjunction *бы* is added to the past tense of the verb in question. *Ex.* Я кончи́лъ бы́ это́ дѣло, если́ бы́ имѣ́лъ досу́гъ, I *would have* finished this business if I *had had* time ; &c.

§ 99. The tense of a Russian verb shows either that the action

of the agent is *now* taking place, or that it has taken place at some time or other *before*, or that it *will* yet take place. And therefore a Russian verb has three tenses, viz. *present* (настоящее), *past* (прошедшее), and *future* (будущее).

§ 100. The aspect of a Russian verb shows the difference of time required for the performance of an action. *Ex.* онъ рѣшалъ, he *was deciding*; онъ рѣшилъ, he *has decided*; онъ крикнулъ, he *shouted (once)*; онъ хаживалъ, he *used to walk (habitually)*.

§ 101. Russian verbs have four Aspects: (1) *imperfect* (несовершенный); (2) *perfect* (совершенный); (3) *perfect of unity* (однократный); (4) *iterative* (многократный). The *present* tense has *no* aspects. The *past* tense *may* have all *four*. The *future* tense has *three*, viz. *imperfect*, *perfect*, and *perfect of unity*.

§ 102. The signification of the several aspects is as follows:—

(1) The *imperfect aspect* denotes either that the action has not altogether ceased, or that it will not finish. *Ex.* Я писалъ, I *wrote*; Я буду писать, I *will be writing*; &c.

(2) The *perfect aspect* denotes either that the action has been *quite* completed, or that it will definitely cease. *Ex.* Я написалъ, I *have written (once for all)*; Я напишу, I *will write (finally)*.

(3) The *aspect of the perfect of unity* denotes either that the action has taken place or will take place *once*, and that *rapidly*. *Ex.* Ты стукнулъ, thou *hast knocked*; Я стукну, I *am going to knock*.

(4) The *iterative aspect* denotes that the action has taken place several times. *Ex.* Я читалъ, I *used (often) to read*; Онъ хаживалъ, He *was in the habit of walking*.

Obs.—Russian verbs admit, too, of a *fifth* aspect being added, that of the *inchoative* (начинательный). This aspect denotes that any sort of action has merely been *begun*. *Ex.* Я запѣлъ = Я началъ пѣть, I *began to sing*; Онъ заиграетъ = Онъ начинетъ играть сию минуту, He *will begin to play this minute*; Вѣтеръ подулъ = вѣтеръ началъ дуть, The *wind began to blow*.

§ 103. The *infinitive mood* does not indicate the time at which an action takes place, yet it has all four aspects: (1) *imperfect*, стучать, to knock; (2) *perfect*, постучать, to knock a little; (3) *perfect of unity*, стукнуть, to give a knock; (4) *iterative*, стучивать, to knock repeatedly.

§ 104. The *indicative mood* comprises all the tenses and all the aspects pertaining to those tenses.

§ 105. The *imperative mood*, although it does not possess tenses, has three aspects: (1) *imperfect*, стучи, knock (thou); (2) *perfect of unity*, стукни, knock (thou) once; (3) *perfect*, постучи, knock (thou) a little.

§ 106. Russian verbs have three persons, which are usually represented by the personal pronouns:—1st person, я, мы; 2nd person, ты, вы; 3rd person, онъ, она́, оно́, ону́, онѣ́. *Ex.* Я пишу́, мы пишемъ; ты пишешь, вы пишете; онъ писалъ, она́ писала, оно́ писало, ону́ or онѣ́ писали.

§ 107. The two Numbers of Russian Verbs are the Singular and the Plural. The former denotes the *action* or *condition* of one agent or object: *Ex.* Я строю, I am building (a house). The latter points to the action or condition of two or more agents or objects: *Ex.* Мы строимъ, We are building (a house).

§ 108. The use of the gender in Russian verbs is confined to the past tense. *Ex.* Я читалъ, она́ читала, оно́ или дитя́ читало, I read, she read, it or the child read.

§ 109. A *participle* is an adjective formed from a verb. *Ex.* Юноша обогащающий свой умъ науками будетъ полезенъ себѣ и другимъ, The youth (*who*) enriches his intellect with science will be useful to himself and to others. The Russian participle takes the place of two words, viz. the relative pronoun который, who or which, and any of the tenses of the indicative mood of a verb; thus, instead of saying Юноша, который обогащаетъ свой умъ науками, &c., it is usual to express the sentence in Russian in the way above shown.

§ 110. Participles, being formed from verbs, possess voices, tenses,

and aspects; and, as verbal *adjectives*, they possess also genders, numbers, and cases.

§ 111. A *Gerund* is a verb placed in such a form as to contain a meaning which is not complete without the addition of some other verb. *Ех. Смотря въ окно, онъ любитъ прекраснымъ видомъ, Whilst looking out of the window, he admires the beautiful view.*

§ 112. A *Gerund*, being part of a verb, has voices, tenses, and aspects.

§ 113. The terminations of Russian verbs are subject to change according to their mood, tense, aspect, person, number, and gender. These changes are called *conjugations* (спряжѣніе).

§ 114. Russian verbs have two conjugations. The 2nd person, singular number, present tense, indicative mood, of *regular* Russian verbs of the 1st conjugation *invariably* terminates in *ешь*: *Ех. Ты читаешь, гуляешь, прощаешься.* Whereas the corresponding part of a *regular* Russian verb of the 2nd conjugation ends in *ишь*: *Ех. стоишь, вертишь, кормишься.*

§ 115. Before considering the conjugation of the other verbs, it may be well to conjugate the auxiliary verb *быть*, to be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect aspect . . *быть*, to be.

Iterative aspect . . *бываѣтъ*, to be (*often*).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense of быть.

| <i>Singular Number.</i> | | <i>Plural Number.</i> | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Я есмь, | I am. | Мы есмь, | We are. |
| Ты еси́, | Thou art. | Вы естѣ́, | You are. |
| Онъ } Она́ } Оно́ } | есть, { He } { She } { It } | Онѣ́ } Они́ } Они́ } | суть, They are. |

Obs.—Есмь, еси́, есмы and естѣ́, are not in use in modern Russian.

Present Tense of быватьъ.

| | | | |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Я бываю, | I am often. | Мы бываемъ, | We are often. |
| Ты бываешь, | Thou art often. | Вы бываёте, | You are often. |
| Онъ } бываётъ, | { He } is often. | Ониъ } бывають, | They are often. |
| Онаъ } | { She } | Ониъ } | |
| Оноъ } | { It } | | |

Past Tense of быть.

| | | | |
|------------|------------|--------------|------------|
| Я былъ, | I was. | Мы были, | We were. |
| Ты былъ, | Thou wast. | Вы были, | You were. |
| Онъ былъ, | He was. | Ониъ } были, | They were. |
| Онаъ была, | She was. | Ониъ } | |
| Оноъ было, | It was. | | |

Past Tense of быватьъ.

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|----------------|------------------|
| Я бывалъ, | I used to be. | Мы бывали, | We used to be. |
| Ты бывалъ, | Thou usedst to be. | Вы бывали, | You used to be. |
| Онъ бывалъ, | He } used to be. | Ониъ } бывали, | They used to be. |
| Онаъ бывала, | She } | Ониъ } | |
| Оноъ бывало, | It } | | |

Future Tense of быть.

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------|
| Я буду, | I will be. | Мы будемъ, | We will be. |
| Ты будешь, | Thou wilt be. | Вы будете, | You will be. |
| Онъ } будетъ, | { He } will be. | Ониъ } будутъ, | They will be. |
| Онаъ } | { She } | Ониъ } | |
| Оноъ } | { It } | | |

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Будь ты, Be thou. | Будьте, Be you. |
| Пусть онъ, онаъ, оноъ, будетъ, | Пусть ониъ, ониъ, будутъ, |
| Let him, her, or it, be. | Let them be. |

PARTICIPLES.

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Present of быть . . . | сущій -ая -ее -іе -ія,* who, or which, is, or are. |
| Present of быватьъ . . . | бывающий -ая -ее -іе -ія, who, or which, is, or are. |
| Past of быть | бывшій -ая -ее -іе -ія, who, or which, was, or were. |
| Past of быватьъ | бывавшій -ая -ее -іе -ія, who, or which, used to be. |
| Future of быть | будущій -ая -ее -іе -ія, who, or which, will be. |

GERUNDS.

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Present of быть . . . | будучи, being. |
| Past of быть | бывъ, бывши, having been. |
| Past of быватьъ . . . | бывавъ, бывавши, having often been. |

* Ancient Slavonic form, сѣи -ая -ое -іе -ія.

§ 116. The auxiliary verb *стать*, to become, to begin, has only two tenses, viz. the future, *я стану*, and the past, *я сталъ*. The first of these is used in place of the same tense of the verb *быть* (*я буду*): *Ех. Я стану, or Я буду, писать*, I will write. The second in place of the same tense of the verb *начать*, to begin: *Ех. Я сталъ, or Я началъ, писать*, I began to write.

§ 117. The regular Russian verbs are conjugated in the following manner:—

FORMS OF THE CONJUGATIONS.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

(Has no Tenses.)

| ASPECTS. | TERMINATIONS. | EXAMPLES. |
|----------------------|---------------|---|
| Imperfect | ать, чь, ти. | { рѣш ^а ть, to decide. печ ^а ь, to bake. не ^с ти, to carry. [all. рѣш ^и ть, to decide, once for испеч ^а ь, to bake through. поне ^с ти, to carry away. дун ^у ть, to blow. сту ^к нуть, to knock. дви ^н уть, to move. нашив ^а ть, to sew on. дѣл ^ы вать, to do. |
| Perfect | ить, чь, ти. | |
| Perfect of Unity . . | нуть. | |
| Iterative | ивать, ывать. | |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| | Singular Number. | Plural Number. |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| The Present Tense has no Aspects. | Я.....ю, у. Тыешь, ишь. Онъ } Она } ...еть, ить. Оно } | Мы.....емъ, имъ. Выете, ите. { Онѣ } ютъ, утъ, ятъ, атъ. { Онѣ } |

Past Tense.

| | | |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Imperfect and Perfect | { Я, Ты, Онъ...лъ. Она...ла. Оно...ло. | Мы, Вы — } ли. |
| Perfect of Unity . . | { Я, Ты, Онъ-нулъ. Она-нула. Оно-нуло. | Мы, Вы — } нули. |
| Iterative | { Я, Ты, Онъ-ивалъ, ывалъ. Она-ивала, ывала. Оно-ивало, ывало. | Мы, Вы — } ивали, ывали. |

Future Tense.

| ASPECTS. | TERMINATIONS. | EXAMPLES. |
|----------------------------|--|---|
| Imperfect | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Я} \quad \text{бѹду} \\ \text{Ты} \quad \text{бѹдѣшь} \\ \text{Онѣ} \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{бѹдетѣ} \\ \text{Онѣ} \end{array} \right\} \end{array} \right\} \text{тѣ, чѣ, ти.}$ | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Мы} \quad \text{бѹдемѣ} \\ \text{Вы} \quad \text{бѹдетѣ} \\ \text{Онѣ} \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{бѹдутѣ} \\ \text{Онѣ} \end{array} \right\} \end{array} \right\} \text{тѣ, чѣ, ти.}$ |
| Perfect | Has the same terminations as the Present Tense. | |
| Perfect of Unity | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Я} \dots\dots\dots\text{ну.} \\ \text{Ты} \dots\dots\dots\text{нешѣ.} \\ \text{Онѣ, Онѣ, Онѣ,} \dots\dots\text{нетѣ.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Мы} \dots\dots\dots\text{немѣ.} \\ \text{Вы} \dots\dots\dots\text{нете.} \\ \text{Онѣ} \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{бѹдутѣ} \\ \text{Онѣ} \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\text{нутѣ.} \end{array} \right.$ |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Has no Tenses.)

| | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Plural Number.</i> |
|--|--|---|
| For the Imperfect, Perfect, and Perfect of Unity | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Ты} \dots\dots\dots\text{и, ѣ, ѣ.} \\ \text{Пусть, Онѣ,} \end{array} \right\} \text{етѣ, итѣ.}$ | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Вы} \dots\dots\dots\text{ите, ьте, ьте.} \\ \text{Пусть,} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Онѣ} \dots\dots\text{югѣ, угѣ.} \\ \text{Онѣ} \dots\dots\text{ятѣ, атѣ.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$ |

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDS.

| ASPECTS. | Present Tense. | |
|--------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| The Present Tense has no Aspects. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>All Numbers and Genders.</i> |
| | $\begin{array}{l} \text{Masc. Fem. Neut.} \\ \text{-шіи, -ая, -ее.} \end{array}$ | -а, -я, -учи, -ючи. |
| | <i>Plural Number.</i> | |
| | $\begin{array}{l} \text{Masc. Fem. \& Neut.} \\ \text{-шіе -шія.} \end{array}$ | |

| | Past Tense. | |
|------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| For all Aspects. | <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>All Numbers and Genders.</i> |
| | $\begin{array}{l} \text{Masc. Fem. Neut.} \\ \text{-вшіи, -ая, -ее.} \end{array}$ | -вѣ, -ши. |
| | <i>Plural Number.</i> | |
| | $\begin{array}{l} \text{Masc. Fem. \& Neut.} \\ \text{-вшіе, -вшія.} \end{array}$ | |

Verbs which terminate in *ся* are also conjugated according to the above table, by adding *сь* or *ся*. *Еж.* Я занимаюсь, I occupy myself; Ты прогуливаешься, Thou art taking a walk; Вы смѣетесь, You are laughing; Онѣ удивляются, They are astonished.

The conjugation of verbs of the passive voice will be explained separately.

§ 118. With regard to the forms of their conjugation, Russian verbs are classed as—

(1) *Regular* (правильный), or such as retain the primary syllable in all their moods, tenses, aspects, and numbers, and which have, in all their parts, regular terminations, according to the ordinary rules for the conjugation of verbs. *Ех.* пишу́, I write; писалъ, I wrote; напишú, I will write; изъясняю, I am explaining; изъясни́лъ, I explained; изъясни́лъ, I explained *once for all*; изъясню́, I will explain; &c.

(2) *Irregular* (неправильный), or such as do not everywhere retain their primary syllable, and which in their terminations depart from the ordinary rules for the conjugation of verbs. *Ех.* иду́, шёлъ, поиду́ (from иди́ти, to go); ѣмъ, ѣлъ, (from ѣсть, to eat); беру́ (from брать, to take); взялъ and возьму́ (from взять, to take); ложусь (from ложиться, to lie down); лёжъ and лягу (from лечь, to lie down); &c.

(3) *Those conveying a sense of fullness* (изобильный), or such as have in the present tense two distinct terminations conveying the self-same meaning. *Ех.* двíжy and двíгаю, I move; стражду́ and страдаю́, I endeavour; álчy and алкаю́, I am hungry; блещу́ and блистаю́, I shine; машу́ and махаю́, I am beckoning.

(4) *Defective* (недостаточный), or such as have not any particular tense or aspect. *Ех.* поймáтъ to catch, очнúтъся to wake up, мóлвyтъ to utter, рáнyтъ to wound, which have no present tense; or the following, which have no past or future tenses of the perfect aspect:—обожáтъ to worship, ожидáтъ to await, опасáтъся to dread, подражáтъ to imitate, сожалѣ́тъ to commiserate, &c.

(5) *Impersonal* (безлѣчный), or such as are used only in the 3rd person. *Ех.* мóжно (it is) possible, должнó (it) should be, кáжется it appears, жалъ (it is a) pity, нѣтъ (т. е. не есть) there is not, спитcя one is drowsy, говорúтъ it is said, хочетcя one would like, разсвѣта́етъ it dawns, морóзyтъ it freezes, говорáтъ they say, &c.

(6) *Frequentative* (учащательный), or such as denote a certain

amount of continuance in the time of the action which they illustrate. *Ех. похаживать* to walk *up and down*, *поглядывать* to look *round*, &c.

§ 119. Russian verbs, according to their construction, are also—

(1) *Simple* (простой), or such as have not prefixed to them prepositions or other words, and which therefore retain their primitive meanings. *Ех. дѣйствовать* to act, *носить* to carry, *ходить* to walk, *являться*, to appear *generally*, &c.

(2) *Compound* (сложный), or such as have prefixed to them prepositions or other words (in some instances nouns substantive). *Ех. благодѣлать* to do *good*, *злодѣйствовать* to do *evil*, *содѣйствовать* to co-operate, *относить* to take *away*, *разсказывать* to narrate, *уходить* to go *away*, *появляться* to make one's appearance, &c.

Obs.—The greater portion of the *compound* verbs are formed by prefixing prepositions to the iterative aspect of *simple* verbs. *Ех. передѣлывать* to do *over again*, *отѣзжать* to ride *away*, *раскрасить* to paint *all over*. Very many *simple* verbs, in order to form their *perfect* aspect, take as prefixes various prepositions, or else borrow the perfect aspect bodily from compound verbs. *Ех. писать* to write, *написать*; *сѣвить* to erect, *посѣвить*; *красить* to colour, *выкрасить*; *цвѣсть* to blossom, *расцвѣсть*; &c.

EXAMPLES OF THE CONJUGATIONS.

§ 120. *Of the Regular Verbs.*

(1) Conjugation of Verbs of the Active and Neuter Voices:—

| Aspects. | INFINITIVE MOOD. | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
| Imperfect . . . | дѣлать. | стучать. | жить. | видѣть. |
| Perfect | сдѣлать. | постучать. | пожить. | увидѣть. |
| Perfect of Unity. | — | стукнуть. | — | — |
| Iterative . . . | дѣлывать. | (not used). | живать. | видывать. |
| | to do. | to knock. | to live. | to see. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. Imperfect Aspect.

| | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| Я. | дѣлаю. | стучу. | живу. | вижу. |
| Ты. | дѣлаешь. | стучишь. | живёшь. | видишь. |
| Онъ, она, оно. | дѣлаетъ. | стучитъ. | живётъ. | видитъ. |
| Мы. | дѣлаемъ. | стучимъ. | живёмъ. | видимъ. |
| Вы. | дѣлаете. | стучите. | живёте. | видите. |
| Онѣ, онѣ. | дѣлаютъ. | стучатъ. | живутъ. | видятъ. |
| | I do, &c. | I knock, &c. | I live, &c. | I see, &c. |

*Aspects.**Past Tense.*

| | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Imperfect . . . | дѣлалъ -а -о -ли. | стучалъ -а -о -ли. | жилъ -а -о -ли. | видѣлъ -а -о -ли. |
| Perfect | сдѣлалъ -а -о -ли. | постучалъ -а -о -ли. | пожилъ -а -о -ли. | увидѣлъ -а -о -ли. |
| Perfect of Unity . | — | стукнулъ -а -о -ли. | — | — |
| Iterative . . . | дѣлывалъ -а -о -ли. | (not used). | живалъ -а -о -ли. | видывалъ -а -о -ли. |
| | I did, &c. | I knocked, &c. | I lived, &c. | I saw, &c. |

Future Tense. Imperfect Aspect.

| | | | | |
|-------------------|--|----------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Sing. Num.</i> | я буду ты будешь онъ } она } оно } будетъ | } дѣлать or стучать, | or жить, | or видѣть. |
| <i>Plur. Num.</i> | мы будемъ вы будете онѣ } онѣ } будутъ | | | |
| | I will do, &c. | I will knock, &c. | I will live, &c. | I will see, &c. |

Future Tense. Perfect Aspect.

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Singular Number.</i> | я сдѣлаю. | постучу. | поживу. | увидю. |
| | ты сдѣлаешь. | постучишь. | поживёшь. | увидишь. |
| | онъ } она } оно } сдѣлаетъ. | постучитъ. | поживётъ. | увидитъ. |
| <i>Plural Number.</i> | мы сдѣлаемъ. | постучимъ. | поживёмъ. | увидимъ. |
| | вы сдѣлаете. | постучите. | поживёте. | увидите. |
| | онѣ } онѣ } сдѣлаютъ. | постучатъ. | поживутъ. | увидятъ. |
| | I will do, &c. | I will knock, &c. | I will live, &c. | I will see, &c. |

Perfect of Unity.

nil

стукну, -ишь, -ишь,
-имъ, -ите, -уть.

nil

nil

I will knock, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Imperfect Aspect.

| | | | | |
|----------------------|---|-------------|-------------|-------------------|
| <i>Sing. Number.</i> | дѣлай | стучи. | живи. | <i>nil</i> |
| | пусть $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$ дѣлаеть, or | стучить, or | живѣть, or | видѣть, or |
| <i>Plur. Number.</i> | дѣлайте | стучите. | живите. | <i>nil</i> |
| | пусть $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{они} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$ дѣлають, or | стучать, or | живу́ть, or | видя́тъ, or |
| | do, &c. | knock, &c. | live, &c. | let them see, &c. |

Perfect Aspect.

| | | | | |
|----------------------|--|---------------|------------|------------|
| <i>Sing. Number.</i> | сдѣлай, | постучи. | поживи. | <i>nil</i> |
| | пусть $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$ сдѣлаеть, or | постучить, or | поживѣть. | <i>nil</i> |
| <i>Plur. Number.</i> | сдѣлайте. | постучите. | поживите. | <i>nil</i> |
| | пусть $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{они} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$ сдѣлають, or | постучать, or | поживу́тъ. | <i>nil</i> |
| | do, &c. | knock, &c. | live, &c. | |

Perfect of Unity.

| | | | | |
|----------------------|------------|---|------------|------------|
| <i>Sing. Number.</i> | <i>nil</i> | стукни, | <i>nil</i> | <i>nil</i> |
| | | пусть $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$ стукнетъ. | | |
| <i>Plur. Number.</i> | <i>nil</i> | стукните. | <i>nil</i> | <i>nil</i> |
| | | пусть $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{они} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$ стукнуть. | | |
| | | knock, &c. | | |

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------|-----------|----------|----------|
| <i>Singular Number.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | дѣлающій, | стучащій, | живущій, | видящій. |
| | <i>Fem.</i> | —щая, | —щая, | —щая, | —щая. |
| | <i>Neut.</i> | —щее, | —щее, | —щее, | —щее. |
| <i>Plural Number.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | —щие, | —щие, | —щие, | —щие. |
| | <i>Fem. & Neut.</i> | —щая, | —щая, | —щая, | —щая. |

He who does, &c. he who knocks, &c. he who lives, &c. he who sees, &c.

Aspects.

Past Tense.

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Imperfect</i> | дѣлавшій, | стучавшій, | жившій, | видѣвшій. |
| | -ая, -ее, -шіе, -шія, | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія, | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія, | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія. |
| <i>Perfect</i> | сдѣлавшій, | постучавшій, | пожившій, | увидѣвшій. |
| | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія, | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія, | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія, | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія. |
| <i>Perfect of Unity</i> | <i>nil</i> | стукнувшій, | <i>nil</i> | <i>nil</i> . |
| | | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія. | | |
| <i>Iterative</i> | дѣлывавшій, | (not used), | живавшій, | видывавшій, |
| | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія, | | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія, | -ая, -ее, -іе, -ія. |
| | he who did, &c. | he who knocked, &c. | he who lived, &c. | he who saw, &c. |

GERUND.

Present Tense.

| | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>All Numbers and Genders.</i> } | дѣлая, doing. | стуча, knocking. | живя, living. | видя, seeing. |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|

*Aspects.**Past Tense.*

| | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Imperfect . . . | дѣл { ѡвѣ, } { ѡвши, } | стуч { ѡвѣ, } { ѡвши, } | живши, | видѣ { вѣ. } { вши. } |
| Perfect | сдѣл { ѡвѣ, } { ѡвши, } | постуч { ѡвѣ, } { ѡвши, } | поживши, | увидѣ { вѣ. } { вши. } |
| Perfect of Unity . | <i>nil.</i> having done. | стѹкн { увѣ, } { увши, } | <i>nil.</i> having lived. | <i>nil.</i> having seen. |

(2) Conjugation of Verbs of the Reflective, Reciprocal and Common Voices:—

Aspects.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| Imperfect . . . | хвалѣться, | сража́ться, | улыба́ться. |
| Perfect | похва́лится, | срази́ться, | <i>nil.</i> |
| Perfect of Unity . | <i>nil.</i> to praise one's self. | <i>nil.</i> to fight. | улыбну́ться. to smile. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| | | | |
|-------------------------|---|--|--|
| <i>Singular Number.</i> | я хвалю́сь, ты хвали́шься, онѣ } хва́лится, она́ } оно́ } | сражаю́сь, сража́ешься, сража́ется, | улыбаю́сь. улыба́ешься. улыба́ется. |
| <i>Plural Number.</i> | мы хвали́мся, вы хвали́тесь, они́ } хва́лятся, опѣ } оупѣ } | сража́емся, сража́етесь, сража́ются, | улыба́емся. улыба́етесь. улыба́ются. |
| | I praise myself, &c. | I fight, &c. | I smile, &c. |

*Aspects.**Past Tense.*

| | | | |
|--------------------|---|--|--------------------------------------|
| Imperfect. . . . | хвали́лся, -лась, -лось, -лись, | сража́лся, -лась, -лось, -лся, -лась, -лось, -лись. | улыба́лся, <i>nil.</i> |
| Perfect | похвали́лся, -лась, -лось, -лись, | срази́лся, -лась, -лось, -лись. | <i>nil.</i> |
| Perfect of Unity . | <i>nil.</i> | <i>nil.</i> | { улыбну́лся -лась, -лось, -лись. |
| Iterative. . . . | хвали́вался, } -валась, -валось, } -вались. | <i>nil.</i> | <i>nil.</i> |
| | I praised myself, &c. | I fought, &c. | I smiled, &c. |

Future Tense.

Imperfect Aspect.

| | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|---|---|
| <i>Singular Number.</i> | я буду | } | хвалиться, or сражаться, or улыбаться, I will praise myself, &c. I will fight, &c. I will smile, &c. |
| | ты будешь, | | |
| | онъ } будетъ, | | |
| | она } | | |
| <i>Plural Number.</i> | мы будемъ, | } | |
| | вы будете, | | |
| | они } будутъ, | | |
| | онѣ } | | |

Perfect Aspect.

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|--|
| <i>Singular Number.</i> | я | — | похвалю́сь, or сражу́сь. | } | | |
| | ты | — | похва́лишься, or срази́шься. | | | |
| | онъ } она́ } оно́ } | — | похва́лится, or срази́тся. | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| <i>Plural Number.</i> | мы | — | похва́лимся, or срази́мся. | } | <i>nil.</i> | |
| | вы | — | похва́литесь, or срази́тесь. | | | |
| | они́ } онѣ́ } | — | похва́лятся, or срази́тся. | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | I will praise my- self, &c. | | I will fight, &c. | |
| <i>Perfect of Unity.</i> | <i>nil.</i> | <i>nil.</i> | <i>nil.</i> | | я улыбу́сь, I will smile, &c. | |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Imperfect Aspect.

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
| пусть { онъ } { она } { оно } | хвались, | — | сражайся, | — | улыбайся. |
| | хвалится, | пусть { онъ } { она } { оно } | сражается, | пусть { онъ } { она } { оно } | улыбается. |
| | хвалитесь, | — | сражайтесь, | — | улыбайтесь. |
| пусть { онъ } { она } { оно } | хвалятся, | пусть { онъ } { она } { оно } | сражаются. | пусть { онъ } { она } { оно } | улыбаются. |
| | Praise thyself, &c. | | Fight thou, &c. | | Smile thou, &c. |

Perfect Aspect.

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|---|------|
| пусть { онъ } { она } { оно } | похвались, | — | сразишься. | } | nil. |
| | похвалится, | пусть { онъ } { она } { оно } | сразится. | | |
| | похвалитесь, | — | сразитесь. | | |
| пусть { онъ } { она } { оно } | похвалятся, | пусть { онъ } { она } { оно } | сразятся. | | |
| | Praise thyself, &c. | | Fight thou, &c. | | |

Perfect of Unity.

| | | |
|-------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>nil.</i> | <i>nil.</i> | улыбнѣсь. |
| | | пусть { опъ } улыбнѣтся. |
| | | { опá } улыбнѣтось. |
| | | { опб } улыбнѣтось. |
| <i>nil.</i> | <i>nil.</i> | пусть { онѣ } улыбнѣтось. |
| | | { онѣ } улыбнѣтось. |
| | | Smile thou, &c. |

PARTICIPLE.

Present Tense.

| | | |
|---|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> } <i>Masc.</i> { хвалѣщійся, } | { сражающійся, } | { улыбающійся. } |
| <i>Num.</i> } <i>Fem.</i> { — аяся, } | { — щаяся, } | { — щаяся } |
| | { — щееся, } | { — щееся. } |
| <i>Plur.</i> } <i>Masc.</i> { — іеся, } | { — щіеся, } | { — щіеся. } |
| <i>Num.</i> } <i>Fem. & Neut.</i> { — іяся, } | { — щіяся, } | { — щіяся. } |
| | he who praises himself, &c. | he who smiles, &c. |
| | he who fights, &c. | |

Aspects.

Past Tense.

Imperfect.

| | | |
|--|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> } <i>Masc.</i> { хвалѣвшійся, } | { сражавшіяся, } | { улыбавшіяся. } |
| <i>Num.</i> } <i>Fem.</i> { — шаяся, } | { — шаяся, } | { — шаяся. } |
| | { — шееся, } | { — шееся. } |
| <i>Plur.</i> } <i>Masc.</i> { — шіеся, } | { — шіеся, } | { — шіеся. } |
| <i>Num.</i> } <i>Fem. & Neut.</i> { — шіяся, } | { — шіяся, } | { — шіяся. } |

Perfect.

| | | |
|--|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> } <i>Masc.</i> { похвалѣвшійся } | { сразѣвшійся. } | } <i>nil.</i> |
| <i>Num.</i> } <i>Fem.</i> { — шаяся, } | { — шаяся. } | |
| | { — шееся, } | |
| <i>Plur.</i> } <i>Masc.</i> { — шіеся, } | { — шіеся. } | |
| <i>Num.</i> } <i>Fem. & Neut.</i> { — шіяся, } | { — шіяся. } | |

Perfect of Unity.

| | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> } <i>Masc.</i> } | <i>nil.</i> | <i>nil.</i> | { улыбнѣвшійся. } |
| <i>Num.</i> } <i>Fem.</i> } | | | { — щаяся. } |
| | | | { — шееся. } |
| <i>Plur.</i> } <i>Masc.</i> } | <i>nil.</i> | <i>nil.</i> | { — шіеся. } |
| <i>Num.</i> } <i>Fem. & Neut.</i> } | | | { — шіяся. } |
| | he who praised himself, &c. | he who fought, &c. | he who smiled, &c. |

GERUND.

Present Tense.

| | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>All Numbers } and Genders. }</i> | хвалѣсь, praising himself. | сражаюсь, fighting. | улыбаюсь. smiling |
|---|-------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|

*Aspects.**All Numbers
and Genders. }**Past Tense.*

| | | | |
|--------------------|---|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Imperfect . . . | хвали́вшись, | сража́вшись, | улыбну́вшись. |
| Perfect | { похвали́вшись, похваля́сь, } | { срази́вшись, сразя́сь. } | <i>nil.</i> |
| Perfect of Unity . | <i>nil.</i> having praised himself. | <i>nil.</i> having fought. | улыбну́вшись. having smiled. |

(3) Conjugation of Verbs of the Passive Voice :—

Aspects.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Imperfect . . . | быть хвали́му, | <i>or</i> награжда́ему, | <i>or</i> посыла́ему. |
| Perfect | быть похвалёну, | <i>or</i> награждёнѹ, | <i>or</i> послану. |
| Iterative . . . | быва́ть хвали́му, to be praised. | <i>or</i> награжда́ему, to be rewarded. | <i>or</i> посыла́ему. to be sent. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Instead of the following antiquated method of conjugating verbs of the present tense and passive voice—Я есмь *or* Я бываю хвали́мъ, *or* награжда́емъ, *or* посыла́емъ, &c., I am praised, *or* rewarded, *or* sent, &c.—it is usual to invert the phraseology so as to convert the passive into an active form.

Ex. меня́
тебя́
его́, её
насъ
васъ
ихъ

хвали́ть *or* награжда́ютъ *or* посыла́ютъ, &c., They praise, *or* reward,
or send me, &c.

Past Tense. (Passive Form.)

| | | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|---|-----------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Imperfect Aspect. | я ты онъ | } | былъ хвали́мъ, | <i>or</i> награжда́емъ, | <i>or</i> посыла́емъ. |
| | она́ | | была́ хвали́ма, | <i>or</i> награжда́ема, | <i>or</i> посыла́ема. |
| | оно́ | | было́ хвали́мо, | <i>or</i> награжда́емо, | <i>or</i> посыла́емо. |
| | мы вы они́ они́ | } | были хвали́мы, | <i>or</i> награжда́емы, | <i>or</i> посыла́емы. |

(Active Form.)

меня́
тебя́
его́
её
насъ
васъ
ихъ

хвали́ли, *or* награжда́ли, *or* посыла́ли.

I was praised, &c. *or* rewarded, &c. *or* sent, &c.

Aspects.

(Passive Form.)

| | | | | | | | | |
|---------------|------|---|-------|-------------|----|--------------|----|-----------|
| Perfect . . . | я | } | былъ | похва́ленъ, | or | награждёнъ, | or | посла́нъ. |
| | ты | | | | | | | |
| | опъ | | | | | | | |
| | она́ | } | была́ | похва́лена, | or | награждена́, | or | посла́на. |
| | онó | | | | | | | |
| | онó | | | | | | | |
| | мы | } | были | похва́лены, | or | награждены́, | or | посла́ны. |
| | вы | | | | | | | |
| | они́ | | | | | | | |
| | онѣ́ | | | | | | | |

I was praised, &c. or rewarded, &c. or sent, &c.

(Active Form.)

| | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------|---|-------------|----|-------------|----|-----------|
| } | меня́ | } | похва́лили, | or | награди́ли, | or | посла́ли. |
| | тебя́ | | | | | | |
| | его́, её́ | | | | | | |
| | насъ́ | | | | | | |
| | васъ́ | | | | | | |
| | ихъ́ | | | | | | |

(Passive Form.)

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|------|---|---------|-----------|----|---------------|----|-------------|
| Iterative . . . | я | } | быва́лъ | хва́лимъ, | or | награжда́емъ, | or | посыла́емъ. |
| | ты | | | | | | | |
| | онъ | | | | | | | |
| | она́ | } | быва́ла | хва́лима, | or | награжда́ема, | or | посыла́ема. |
| | онó | | | | | | | |
| | онó | | | | | | | |
| | мы | } | быва́ли | хва́лимы, | or | награжда́емы, | or | посыла́емы. |
| | мы | | | | | | | |
| | они́ | | | | | | | |
| | онѣ́ | | | | | | | |

(Active Form.)

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------|---|--------|---------------|----|--------------|----|--------------|
| } | меня́ | } | быва́- | хва́лили, | or | награжда́ли, | or | посыла́ли. |
| | тебя́ | | | | | | | |
| | его́, её́ | | | | | | | |
| | насъ́ | | | | | | | |
| | васъ́ | | | | | | | |
| | ихъ́ | | lo | they praised, | or | rewarded, | or | sent me, &c. |

*Aspects.**Future Tense.*

Imperfect . . . Instead of using the now obsolete form of я бѹду хва́лимъ, I will be praised ; or награжда́емъ, rewarded ; or посыла́емъ, sent, &c., it is usual to say меня́ бѹдутъ хва́лить, they will praise ; or награжда́тъ, reward ; or посыла́тъ, send me, &c.

Perfect . . . я бѹду похва́ленъ, or награждёнъ, or посла́нъ, &c. or меня́, &c. похва́лять, or награди́шь, or пошлю́тъ, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Imperfect . . . Пусть меня́ хва́лять, let me be praised ; or награжда́ютъ, rewarded ; or посыла́ютъ, sent, &c.

Perfect . . . Пусть меня́ похва́лять, let them praise ; or награди́тъ, reward ; or пошлю́тъ, send me, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

| <i>Aspects.</i> | | <i>Present Tense.</i> | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <i>Num.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | { хвали́мый, } | { награжда́емый, } | { посыла́емый. |
| | <i>Fem.</i> | { — ая, } | { — ая, } | { — ая. |
| | <i>Neut.</i> | { — ое, } | { — ое, } | { — ое. |
| <i>Plur.</i> <i>Num.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | { — ые, } | { — ые, } | { — ые, |
| | <i>Fem. & Neut.</i> | { — ья, } | { — ья, } | { — ья. |

he who is praised, &c. he who is rewarded, &c. he who is sent, &c.

Past Tense.

| <i>Imperfect.</i> | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <i>Num.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | { хва́ленный. } | | |
| | <i>Fem.</i> | { — ая. } | <i>nil.</i> | <i>nil.</i> |
| | <i>Neut.</i> | { — ое. } | | |
| <i>Plur.</i> <i>Num.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | { — ые. } | | |
| | <i>Fem. & Neut.</i> | { — ья. } | | |

Perfect.

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> <i>Num.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | { похва́ленный } | { награжде́нный, } | { по́сланный. |
| | <i>Fem.</i> | { — ая, } | { — ая, } | { — ая. |
| | <i>Neut.</i> | { — ое, } | { — ое, } | { — ое. |
| <i>Plur.</i> <i>Num.</i> | <i>Masc.</i> | { — ые, } | { — ые, } | { — ые. |
| | <i>Fem. & Neut.</i> | { — ья, } | { — ья, } | { — ья. |

he who was praised, &c. he who was rewarded, &c. he who was sent, &c.

GERUND.

Present Tense.

| | | | |
|---|------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <i>All Numbers</i> <i>and Genders.</i> | бúдучи хвали́мъ, | or награжда́емъ, | or посыла́емъ. |
| | being praised. | rewarded. | sent. |

Past Tense.

| | | | |
|---|----------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| <i>All Numbers</i> <i>and Genders.</i> | бывъ похва́ленъ, | or награжде́нъ, | or по́сланъ. |
| | having been praised. | rewarded. | sent. |

§ 121. *Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs.*

The following Table exemplifies the manner of conjugating some of the Russian Irregular Verbs : —

| INFINITIVE MOOD. | | | INDICATIVE MOOD. | | | | IMPERATIVE MOOD. | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| Nos. | Imperfect Aspect. | Perfect Aspect. | Present Tense. | | Imperfect. Past. | Perfect. Past. | Perfect. Future. | Imperfect Aspect. | Perfect Aspect. |
| | | | 1st Pers. Sing. | 2nd Pers. Sing. | | | | | |
| 1 | берѣчь | сберѣчь, to take care. | берёгү | берёжѣшь | берѣзь | сберѣзь | сберёгү | берёгү | сберёгй |
| 2 | брать | взять, to take. [vehicle. | берү | берѣшь | бралъ | взялъ | возмү | бери | возмй |
| 3 | везти | повезти, to carry, in a | везү | везѣшь | вѣзь | повѣзь | пивезү | вези | повези. |
| 4 | вести | повести, to lead. | ведү | ведѣшь | вѣлъ | повѣлъ | поведү | веди | поведи. |
| 5 | вечь | повечь, to drag. | векү | вечѣшь | вѣкъ | повѣкъ | повекү | вечи | повечи. |
| 6 | грызть | изгрызть, to gnaw. | грызү | грызѣшь | грызь | изгрызъ | изгрызү | грызи | изгрызи |
| 7 | давать | дать, to give. | даю | даёшь | давалъ | далъ | дамъ | давай | дай |
| 8 | идти | пойти, to go. | иду | идѣшь | шёлъ | пошёлъ | пойду | иди | пойди |
| 9 | класть | положить, to put. | кладү | кладѣшь | кладъ | положилъ | положү | клади | положи |
| 10 | лѣзть | полѣзть, to climb. | лѣзү | лѣзѣшь | лѣзь | полѣзь | полѣзү | лѣзь | полѣзь |
| 11 | ложиться | лечь, to lie down. | ложүсь | ложишься | ложился | лёгъ | лягү | ляжь | лягь |
| 12 | мочь | мочь, to be able. | могү | можешь | могъ | смогъ | смогү | ни | ни |
| 13 | нести | понести, to carry. | несү | несѣшь | несъ | понесъ | понесү | неси | попеси |
| 14 | облекать | одѣть, to clothe. | облекаю | облекаешь | облекалъ | облѣкъ | облеку | облекай | облѣки |
| 15 | обрекать | обречь, to condemn. | обрекаю | обрекаешь | обрекалъ | обрѣкъ | обрекү | обрекай | обрѣки |
| 16 | пасті | <i>ни</i> | пасү | пасѣшь | пасъ | <i>ни</i> | <i>ни</i> | паси | <i>ни</i> |
| 17 | печь | испечь, to bake. | пекү | печѣшь | пѣкъ | испѣкъ | испекү | печи | испекй |
| 18 | расти | вырости, to grow. | растү | растѣшь | росъ | выросъ | выростү | расти | вырости |
| 19 | сидѣться | сѣсть, to sit down. | сажусь | сидишься | салился | сѣлъ | сѣлү | сиди | сиди |
| 20 | стеречь | постеречь, to watch. | стерегү | стережѣшь | стерѣтъ | постерѣтъ | постерегү | стереги | постереги |
| 21 | спасать | спасти, to save. | спасю | спасѣшь | спасалъ | спасъ | спасү | спасай | спаси |
| 22 | стричь | остричь, to shave. | стригү | стрижѣшь | стрижъ | острижъ | остригү | стриги | остриги |
| 23 | сѣчь | высѣчь, to hew. | сѣкү | сѣчѣшь | сѣкъ | высѣкъ | высѣкү | сѣки | высѣки |
| 24 | отвергать | отвергнуть, to cast away. | отвергаю | отвергаешь | отвергалъ | отвергъ | отвергну | отвергай | отвергни |
| 25 | отверзать | отверзать, to open. | отвѣраю | отвѣраешь | отвѣралъ | отвѣръ | отвѣрзү | отвѣрзай | отвѣрни |
| 26 | тереть | потерѣть, to rub. | тру | трѣшь | тѣръ | потѣръ | потру | три | потри |
| 27 | трясти | потрясти, to shake. | трясү | трясѣшь | трясъ | потрясъ | потрасү | тряси | потраси |
| 28 | умирать | умереть, to die. | умираю | умираешь | умиралъ | умрѣ | умрү | умирай | умри |
| 29 | ѣсть | сѣсть, to eat up. | ѣмъ, ѣмь, ѣсте, ѣдите. | ѣмъ, ѣмь, ѣсте, ѣдите. | ѣлъ | сѣлъ | сѣмъ | ѣшь | сѣшь |
| 30 | ѣхать | поѣхать, to ride, or drive. | ѣду, ѣдете, ѣдутъ. | ѣдемъ, ѣдете, ѣдутъ. | ѣхалъ | поѣхалъ | поѣду | ни | поѣжай |

Obs.—Of the irregular verbs inserted in this Table, only two are used in the Aspect of the Perfect of Unity, viz. (No. 27) *трясти*—*тряхнуть*, and (No. 22) *стричь*—*стригнуть*; whereas in the Iterative Aspect the following are found:—(No. 3) *везти*, (No. 4) *вести*—*важивать*, (No. 13) *нести*—*нашивать*, (No. 23) *сѣчь*—*сѣкать*, (No. 29) *ѣсть*—*ѣдять*, (No. 30) *ѣхать*—*ѣзжать*. The verb *мочь* (No. 12) is not used in the future tense of the Imperfect Aspect. One cannot, therefore, say *Я буду* or *Мы будемъ мочь*.

§ 122. RULES FOR THE CONJUGATION OF RUSSIAN VERBS.

For the conjugation of Russian Verbs there are many rules, but there are also a large number of exceptions to them. We will note only those rules which may be pronounced steadfast, *i.e.* such as admit of the least number of exceptions.

I. *Rules for the Infinitive Mood.*

(1) The infinitive mood of Russian Verbs of the imperfect aspect generally ends in *ть* preceded by any of the vowels *a, e, u, o, y, ъ, ѣ, я*. *Еж.* чита́ть, to read; трё́ть, to rub; хва́лѣть, to praise; колю́ть, to prick; то́нѣть, to sink; ры́ть, to dig; имѣ́ть, to have; забавля́ть, to amuse. We also find the same termination *ть* preceded by the consonants *з* and *с*. *Еж.* лѣ́зть, to climb; гры́зть, to gnaw; плес́ть, to plait; цвѣ́сть, to bloom. A very few verbs have their infinitive mood in *чь* and *ми*; such as влечѣ́ь, to drag; идѣ́ми, to go (on foot).

(2) The infinitive mood of Russian Verbs of the perfect aspect likewise generally ends in *ть*. This termination has, however, various prefixes. Some verbs form their perfect aspect in a way peculiar to themselves—

| | | |
|-----------------------|------------|-----------------|
| <i>Еж.</i> отлича́ть, | отличѣ́ть, | to distinguish. |
| принимáть, | принѣ́ть, | to receive. |
| одѣ́вать, | одѣ́ть, | to dress. |
| бра́ть, | взя́ть, | to take. |

Others, in order to form their perfect aspect, take as prefixes various prepositions :

| | | |
|---------------------|------------|-----------|
| <i>Еж.</i> любѣ́ть, | полюбѣ́ть, | to love. |
| писа́ть, | написа́ть, | to write. |

Others, again, borrow a perfect aspect from compound verbs analogous to themselves :

| | | |
|---------------------|---------------|--|
| <i>Еж.</i> берѣ́чь, | сберѣ́чь, | to guard (which is from the verb <i>сберега́ть</i>). |
| гото́вить, | пригото́вить, | to prepare (which is from the verb <i>приготовля́ть</i>). |
| смотре́ть, | посмотре́ть, | to behold (which is from the verb <i>посмáтривать</i>). |

(3) The infinitive mood of verbs of the aspect of the perfect of unity ends in *нуть*. *Ех. мигну́ть*, to wink; св́исну́ть, to give a whistle; дёрну́ть, to give a pull.

(4) The infinitive mood of verbs of the iterative aspect ends in *вать* and *ывать*. *Ех. хажива́ть*, to be in the habit of walking; ви́дыва́ть, to be in the habit of seeing; чи́тыва́ть, to read often.

Note.—But few Russian verbs have the iterative aspect, which can in good style and conversation be used, and therefore this aspect should be employed with great discernment. Verbs ending in *вать* and *ывать* cannot have an iterative aspect. *Ех. разсмáтрива́ть*, to examine; обя́зыва́ть, to oblige, &c.

II. Rules for the Indicative Mood.

(1) The first person singular number, present tense, has two terminations, viz. in *ю* and *у*. Before the latter there is always a consonant. *Ех. иду́*, I go; си́жу, I sit down. The terminations of the second person of the same number and tense are in *ешь* and *ишь* respectively, and those of the third person of the same number and tense in *етъ* and *умъ*. The terminations of the first person, plural number, present tense, are *емъ* and *умъ*; of the second person of the same number and tense *ете*, *уме*; of the third person of the same number and tense (of verbs of the first conjugation only) *юмъ* or *умъ*. Thus it will be found that the second person of the singular number, present tense, of verbs of the first conjugation has *ешь* for its termination; and so the third person of the plural number, present tense, of verbs of this conjugation will end in *юмъ* or *умъ*. *Ех. чита́ешь*, thou readest; чита́юмъ, they read; ве́дѣешь, thou ledest; ве́дѣумъ, they lead; similarly the second person of the same number and tense of verbs of the second conjugation has *ишь*. Consequently the third person of the plural number will be in *амъ* or *ямъ*: *Ех. молча́ишь*, thou art silent; молча́тъ, they are silent; смóтритишь, thou gazest; смóтрятъ, they gaze. Amongst verbs of the second conjugation there are two only which do not follow this rule, viz., бѣ́жишь, thou runnest; бѣ́гѣумъ, they run (not бѣ́жамъ); хóчѣешь, thou desirest; хотѣ́умъ, they desire (not хóчѣумъ).

(2) Verbs which terminate in the first person, singular number, of the present tense in *у*, change *и* in the second and third persons

singular, and in the first and second persons plural into *ю*. *Ех. берѣю, I take care, &c.; берѣѣю, берѣѣтъ, берѣѣмъ, берѣѣте.* In the third person of the plural number they retain the letter *и*; thus, *берѣѣмъ, берѣѣтъ*, they watch.

(3) Verbs which terminate in the first person, singular number, of the present tense in *ку*, change *к* in the second and third persons singular, and in the first and second persons plural, into *и*. *Ех. влѣкѣю, I attract; влѣкѣю, влѣкѣтъ, влѣкѣмъ, влѣкѣте.* In the third person of the plural number they retain the letter *к*; thus, *влѣкѣмъ, влѣкѣтъ*, they cook.

(4) Monosyllabic Verbs, which terminate in *иѣ*, change *иѣ* in the first person singular of the present tense into *ю*. *Ех. пѣю, to drink; шѣю, to sew; вѣю, to twine; бѣю, to beat; пѣю, шѣю, вѣю, бѣю.* To this rule the verb *бръѣю*, to shave, is an exception, as it makes *бръѣю, &c.*

(5) The present tense is used sometimes in the sense of the future. *Ех. за́втра Я и́дѣю въ дере́вню, To-morrow I am going to the village.*

(6) The past tense of verbs of the imperfect and perfect aspects terminates in *ѣ*. It is formed, as a general rule, from the infinitive mood of the imperfect and perfect aspects by changing *ѣ* into *ѣ*. *Ех. читаѣю to read, читаѣю, хотѣю to desire, хотѣю; мѣю to knead, мѣю.* When the infinitive mood terminates in *ѣ*, the termination of the past tense is generally found to be either in *ѣ* or *ѣ*. *Ех. влѣѣю to attract, влѣѣю, берѣѣю to guard, берѣѣю.* Similarly, when the infinitive mood terminates in *ѣ*, the termination of the past tense is in *ѣ* or *ѣ*. *Ех. нести́ю to bring, нести́ю; везти́ю to carry, везти́ю.* The exceptions are: *цвѣсти́ю to blossom, and вѣсти́ю to lead*, whose past tenses are *цвѣѣю* and *вѣѣю* respectively.

(7) The termination of the past tense of verbs of the aspect of perfect of unity is in *ѣ*; thus, *мѣю to work*, makes *мѣю.*

(8) The termination of the past tense of verbs of the iterative aspect is in *ѣ* or *ѣ*. The past tenses of both the perfect of unity and iterative aspects are derived from their respective infinitive moods by changing *ѣ* into *ѣ*: *Ех. хѣжѣю, to make a practice of going, хѣжѣю.* Verbs which do not possess an iterative aspect replace the want of one by adding the word *бѣѣю*

to the past tense of the imperfect aspect : *Ех. Я бывало встрѣчалъ, I used to meet.*

(9) The future tense of verbs of the imperfect aspect is formed by prefixing the future tense of the auxiliary verb *быть* to the infinitive mood of the verb which is being conjugated : *Ех. Я буду хвалѣть, ты будешь хвалѣть, &c., I will praise, &c.*

(10) The future tense of verbs of the perfect aspect has the same terminations as has the present tense of verbs of the imperfect aspect. *Ех. Я похвалю, ты похвалишь, &c., I will praise, &c.*

(11) The future tense of the aspect of the perfect of unity terminates in *ну, нѣшь, &c.* It is formed from the infinitive mood of the same aspect by casting away the final letters *ть* ; thus, *двѣнуть, to move, makes двѣну, двѣнешь, &c.*

III. *The Imperative Mood.*

(1) As a general rule, only two persons of the imperative mood are used, viz. the 2nd and 3rd : *Ех. читай read (ты, thou, being understood), пусть онъ, она or онó, читаемъ, читайте (вы), пусть онѣ or онѣ читаютъ.* There are cases, however, in which the 1st person may be used ; for example, *Будь Я богаты, Я бы помогъ ему,* were I rich, I would assist him. In the same way, the 1st person plural of the present or future tenses of verbs of the perfect aspect is used for the 1st person plural of the imperative mood ; thus, *идемъ, ѣдемъ, пойдѣмъ, поѣдемъ, let us go, let us eat, &c.* In such instances the suffix *те* is frequently added to the 1st person plural of the imperative mood : *Ех. побѣжимте, сѣдемте, let us run, let us sit down.*

(2) Sometimes the infinitive mood is used in place of the imperative ; thus, *Молчать ! Не шумѣть ! Be silent ! Do not make a noise !*

(3) In the practice of a high style of conversation or writing, to the 3rd person of the imperative mood is added the particle *да* ; for example, *да вступитъ* instead of *пусть онъ вступитъ, let him enter.*

IV. *The Participles.*

§ 123. The active participles of verbs of the active and neuter voices terminate as follows :—The present participle in *ущѣ, щая, щее,* for the masc., fem., and neut. genders, respectively. This participle

is derived from the 3rd person, plural number, present tense, indicative mood, by changing the final letters *мѣ* into *и́й* : *Еж.* смóтрѣмѣ, they regard ; смóтрѣи́й, &c., he who regards, &c. The past participle in *ви́й*, *ви́ая*, *ви́ея*, for the masc., fem., and neut. genders, respectively. This participle is derived from the singular number, past tense, indicative mood, by changing *лѣ* into *ви́й* : *Еж.* смóтрѣлѣ, I regarded ; смóтрѣви́й, &c., he who regarded, &c. In the case of verbs which have not the letter *л* in the formation of their past tense, the final letter *ѣ* of that tense is changed into *и́й*, &c. *Еж.* рoсѣ, he grew ; рoси́й, &c., he who grew, &c. The past participles of the following verbs are as follows :—вeсѣ́ти to lead, вѣлѣ́, вѣди́й ; идѣ́ти, to go, шѣлѣ́, шѣди́й ; цвѣсѣ́ти, to blossom, цвѣлѣ́, цвѣти́й ; пaсѣ́ти, to fall, пáлѣ́, пáди́й.

§ 124. To the terminations of the participles of verbs of the reflexive, reciprocal, and common voices, the particle *ся* is added. *Еж.* смóтрѣи́йся, he who regards ; смóтрѣви́йся, he who regarded ; &c.

§ 125. The participles of verbs of the passive voice are derived only from verbs of the active voice. The present participle of verbs of the passive voice ends in *мый*. This participle is formed from the 1st person, plural number, present tense, indicative mood, of the active voice, by changing the final letter *ѣ* into *и́й*, *ая*, *ея*, (for the masc., fem., and neut. genders respectively). *Еж.* хвáлимѣ, we praise ; хвáли́мый, &c., he who is praised ; &c. The present passive participles of the following verbs form an exception to this rule :—искáти, to seek, искóмый ; пaсѣ́ти, to pasture, пaсóмый ; вeсѣ́ти, to lead, вeдóмый. The past participle of verbs of the passive voice ends in *и́й* or *тый*, &c. This participle is formed from the singular number, past tense, indicative mood, active voice, by changing the final letters *лѣ* of that tense into *и́й* or *тый*. *Еж.* дѣлалѣ́, he made, дѣлани́й, he who is made ; шилѣ́, he sewed ; шитое́, that which is sewn ; &c. The following verbs form exceptions to the above rule :—хвáлѣ́ти, to praise, хвáленнѣй ; носѣ́ти, to carry, но́шеннѣй ; прощáти, to pardon, прóщеннѣй ; забывáти, to forget, забы́тый and забвѣ́ннѣй.

Obs.—The present participle of a verb of the passive voice can only be formed by means of either of the two neuter verbs бывáти and обитáти.

§ 126. In the Russian language there are no other future participles than that of the verb *быть*, viz. *будущій -ая -ее -ие -ія*.

§ 127. Participles are declined as nouns adjective.

§ 128. Participles of the passive voice have both full and shortened terminations; thus, from the full forms come the following shortened forms: *уважаемый, -ая -ое*, respected, *уважаемо -а -о*; *читанный -ая -ое*, read, *читано -а -о*.

§ 129. As a general rule, participles with full terminations are confined to writing and to books, whereas in conversation the shortened forms of such participles are more often met with. *Ех. Этотъ домъ хорошó построенъ*, This house (is) well built; *Эта кни́га прочита́на*, This book (is) read *through*; *Приказа́ние исполнено*, The order (is) executed. In conversation are likewise used such participles as have the meaning of nouns adjective; for instance, *Онъ сýщій ребёнокъ*, He is a *regular* child; *ра́неный офице́ръ*, a wounded officer; *непроходи́мый лѣсъ*, an impenetrable forest; &c.

V. Gerunds.

§ 130. Gerunds of the present tense of verbs of the active and neuter voices end in *а, я, ю* and *ючи*. *Ех. стуча́* knocking, *сидя́* sitting, *чита́я* or *чита́ючи* reading, *пи́шучи* writing.

§ 131. The gerunds of the past tense of such verbs end in *оу* or *вши*. *Ех. сидѣ́оу, сидѣ́вши*, having sat, &c.

§ 132. The first noted terminations of gerunds of either of the above tenses (those in *а, я, оу*) are shortened, whereas those last noted (in *ючи, вши, вши*) are full. The former are used in ordinary writing and in conversation, the latter in less refined language, or in the vulgar tongue.

§ 133. The gerunds of the present tense, like the participles of the same tense, are formed from the 3rd person, plural number, present tense, indicative mood, of the verb, by changing *ятъ* into *а*, and *ятъ, утъ* and *ютъ* into *я*. *Ех. молча́тъ* they are silent, *молча́*; *хóдятъ*, they go, *хóдя*; *ведýтъ*, they lead, *ведý*; *жела́ютъ*, they wish, *жела́я*.

§ 134. The gerunds of the past tense are formed from past

participles by changing the termination *вши* into *ши* or *съ*. *Ех.* молча́вший, молча́вши, молча́съ, having been silent; написа́вший, написа́вши, having written.

§ 135. In the case of verbs of the reflective, reciprocal, and common voices, the particles *сь* and *ся* are respectively added to the shortened form of gerunds of the present tense, and to the full forms of gerunds of the past tense. *Ех.* прѣ́чась, hiding, спря́тавшись, having hidden, &c.

§ 136. To gerunds of the present tense, passive force (which are but seldom used) is prefixed the future gerund of the auxiliary verb *быть*: *Ех.* бѣ́дючи хва́лимъ, being praised. In like manner, to gerunds of the past tense, passive voice, the gerund of the past tense of the same verb is prefixed: *Ех.* бы́въ хва́ленъ or похва́ленъ, having been praised.

§ 137. Gerunds have sometimes the meanings of adverbs. *Ех.* онъ пи́шетъ сто́я, he writes *standing*, &c. Gerunds of this kind are called *verbal adverbs* (отглагольное нарѣ́чiе).

THE ADVERB.

§ 138. An Adverb is generally used with a Verb, in order to show the quality, circumstances, and mode of action. *Ех.* Я шѣ́лъ ти́хо, I went *quietly*; Онъ прогу́ливался вче́ра верхо́мъ, He went out *yesterday on horseback*. Certain adverbs are also placed before other parts of speech:—(a) Examples of those preceding nouns substantive: мно́го трудо́въ, *many labours*; нѣ́сколько солда́тъ, *several soldiers*; вза́мѣнъ де́негъ, *in lieu of money*; вмѣ́сто кни́гъ, *in place of books*.—(b) Examples of those preceding nouns adjective: онъ о́чень приле́женъ, he is *very* industrious; весе́ма́ по́лезная кни́га, an *exceedingly* useful book.—(c) Examples of adverbs coupled with others, in order to intensify the meaning which it is desired should be conveyed: весе́ма́ хоро́шъ, *exceedingly* good; о́чень бли́зко, *very* near; го́раздо ра́нѣе, *much* earlier; е́два́ примѣ́тно, *scarcely* perceptible.

§ 139. According to their respective significations, adverbs are classed as follows:—

(1) *Adverbs of Quality*:—These denote the quality or mode of action, in answer to the questions *какъ?* how? *какимъ образомъ?*

in what manner? *Ех.* Я провожѹ (from провождѣть) время хорошо, I pass time *well*; Ты всё дѣлаешь какъ нибудь, Thou doest everything *anyhow*; Онъ любитъ прогуливаться пѣшкомъ, He likes to take his exercise *on foot*; &c.

(2) *Adverbs of Quantity*:—(a) Answering to the question, сколько? how much? how many? *Ех.* много, мало, нѣсколько, однажды, &c.—(b) Answering to the question, во-сколько? how many times? *Ans.* вдвое two-fold, впятеро five-fold, &c.—(c) Answering to the question, на-сколько? into how many times? *Ans.* на-двое in two, на-четыре, into four, &c.

(3) *Adverbs of Place*:—These answer to the questions—идь? where? куда? whither? откуда? whence? from what place? *Answers*: здѣсь here, тутъ here or there, тамъ there, вездѣ everywhere, нигдѣ nowhere, гдѣ-нибудь somewhere or other, дома at home, туда thither, сюда hither, домой homewards, отсюда thence, издали from afar, снаружи from without. To this class of adverbs belong also certain nouns substantive, used in the instrumental case, that is, when such signify the way by which one travels: Онъ ѣхалъ моремъ и дорогою захворалъ, He went *by sea*, and fell ill on the road.

(4) *Adverbs of Time*:—These answer to the question, когда when? *Answers*: сегодня to-day, завтра to-morrow, нынѣ at present, днемъ by day, ночью by night, прежде before, послѣ after, часто often, рѣдко seldom, рано early, поздно late, &c. To this class of adverbs belong also уже already, еще still, again, все always, &c.

(5) *Adverbs of Precedence*, such as сперва first, at first, сначала first, at first sight, снова anew, опять again, во-первыхъ, firstly, во-вторыхъ secondly, &c.

(6) *Adverbs of Intensity and Augmentation*, such as весьма extremely, очень, гораздо much, слишкомъ too much, крайне to the utmost, &c.

(7) *Adverbs denoting diminution or decrease*, such as едва scarcely, чуть hardly, насилью with difficulty, почти almost, &c.

(8) *Adverbs denoting sufficiency*: довольно enough, полно fully, бѣдемъ that will do, enough, &c.

(9) *Interrogative Adverbs*, such as когда? when? зачѣмъ?

why? для чего? for what? гдѣ? where? куда? whither? неужели? is it possible? indeed! &c.

(10) *Affirmative Adverbs*, such as *пóдлинно* really, indeed, *исти́нно* verily, *въ са́момъ дѣ́лѣ* in fact, *да* yes, *такъ* so, *дѣ́йстви́тельно* actually, *конéчно* of course, &c.

(11) *Negative Adverbs*, such as *не* no, *нѣтъ* not, *не такъ* not so, *ника́къ* by no means, *ни́мало* not at all, *ни́сколько* not any, *отню́дъ* by no means, *совсѣ́мъ не* and *во́все не* not at all, &c.

(12) *Hypothetical Adverbs*, such as *по-кра́йней мѣ́рѣ* at least, *авось* it is to be hoped, *чу́ть-ли* scarcely, *вра́дь-ли* it is doubtful whether, *мо́жетъ-быть* perhaps, &c.

(13) *Exclusive Adverbs*, such as *то́кмо*, *то́лько* and *ли́шь* only, *еди́нственно* solely, *кро́мѣ* besides, &c.

(14) *Adverbs of Comparison*, such as *подо́бно* like, *наравне́* on a level, *та́кимъ о́бразомъ* in this manner, &c.

(15) *Adverbs denoting disparity or dissimilitude*, such as *и́на́че* otherwise, *напро́тивъ* on the contrary, *на-обо́ротъ* *vice-versá*, &c.

(16) *Adverbs denoting partnership*, such as *вмѣ́стѣ* together, *воо́бщѣ* in general, generally, *за-одно́* jointly, &c.

(17) *Adverbs denoting exchange*, such as *вмѣ́сто* instead of, *вза́мѣнѣ*, in lieu of, &c.

(18) *Adverbs of illustration*, such as *и́менно* namely, *то е́сть* that is, *ка́къ-то* as follows, *напримѣ́ръ* for example, &c.

(19) *Adverbs denoting suddenness of action*, such as *невзначáй* unawares, *внеза́пно* unexpectedly, *вд́ругъ* all at once, *мгновéнно* instantaneously, *неча́янно* unexpectedly, &c.

(20) *Enclitical Adverbs employed in popular speech*, such as *мо́лѣ* then, *де́* said he, *де́ска́тъ* so to say, *би́шь* then, &c.

§ 140. All Adverbs, except the qualifying (*ка́чественное*), and adverbs of quantity (*ко́личественное*), are called *circumstantial* (*обсто́ятельственное*) adverbs.

§ 141. Adverbs denoting quality, which are derived from qualifying nouns adjective, have degrees of comparison, as, for example, *хорошо́* good, *лучше́* better; *весе́ло* joyous, *веселѣ́е* more joyous, *всѣ́хъ* *веселѣ́е* merrier than all. Certain of the adverbs, too, which denote

quantity, place, and time, have likewise degrees of comparison, such as *много* much, *болѣ* more, *болѣ всѣхъ* more than all, *близко* near, *ближе* nearer, *всѣхъ ближе* nearer than all, *рано* early, *ранѣ* earlier, *всѣхъ ранѣ* earlier than all.

THE PREPOSITION.

§ 142 Prepositions indicate the relationship between objects. *Ех.* *ученикъ сѣлъ за столъ*, the pupil sat down *at* the table. Prepositions likewise serve to alter the meaning of the words to which they are prefixed: *Ех.* *до-ходъ* income, revenue, *у-ходъ* departure, *при-ходъ* arrival, *вос-ходъ* ascent, *перемѣнить* to alter, *размѣнить* to exchange.

§ 143. Prepositions are classed as separable and inseparable.

§ 144. The separable prepositions require after them the oblique cases noted below:—

- (1) *Genitive*: *безъ*, *безо* without, *для* for, *ради* for the sake of, *до* up to, *изъ* out of, *отъ* away from, *у* at, *изъ-за* from behind, *изъ-подъ* from under.
- (2) *Dative*: *къ*, *ко* to, towards.
- (3) *Accusative*: *про* concerning, *чрезъ*, *чѣрезъ* through, across, *сквозъ* through.
- (4) *Instrumental*: *надъ*, *надо* over.
- (5) *Prepositional*: *при* near, in the presence of.
- (6) *Genitive or Instrumental*: *мѣжду*, *межъ* between, among.
- (7) *Accusative or Instrumental*: *за* behind *or* for, *подъ* under, at, *предъ*, *перѣдъ* before.
- (8) *Accusative or Prepositional*: *въ*, *во* in, into, *на* on, upon, against, *о*, *объ*, *обо* about.
- (9) *Genitive, Accusative or Instrumental*: *съ*, *со* from, with, together with.
- (10) *Dative, Accusative or Prepositional*: *по* by, up to, after.

§ 145. Amongst the class of separable prepositions may be reckoned also certain adverbs of place which govern the genitive case. *Ех.* *близъ* near to, *возлѣ* beside, *подлѣ* along, near, *около* about, *противъ* opposite to, *мимо* by, *среди* in the midst of, *впередѣ* in front of, *позадѣ* behind.

§ 146. The inseparable prepositions are *воз, вы, низ, пере, пре* and *раз*. They do not alter the cases of the nouns which follow them, but they change the meaning of the word to which they are prefixed: *Ех. годный* suitable, *выгодный* profitable, *мѣна* exchange, *перемѣна* alteration, *строить* to build, *разстроить* to disarrange.

THE CONJUNCTION.

§ 147. A conjunction serves to connect either words or whole sentences. *Ех. Иванъ и Пётръ пришлѣ,* John and Peter came; *Если я буду здоровъ то приѣду къ вамъ,* If I am well, then I will come to you; *Онъ или не хочетъ или не можетъ помочь мнѣ,* He either does not wish to, or cannot, help me.

§ 148. Conjunctions are divided into the following:—

(1) *Copulative* (соединительный), such as *и* and, *даже* even, *притомъ* with this, *не только* and *не только* not only, *сверхъ-того* besides which, *также* likewise, *же* but, &c.

(2) *Partitive* (раздѣлительный): *или* and *либо* or, &c.

(3) *Explanatory* (изъяснительный): *что* that, *бѣдѣ* as if, *вѣдѣ* then, now you must know, *тогда* какъ whilst, *такъ* что so that, *такъ какъ* as, &c.

(4) *Reiterative* (повторительный): *ни-ни* neither—nor, *частію* and *отчасти* partly, *то-то* now—then, &c.

(5) *Comparative* (сравнительный): *какъ—такъ* as—so, *сколь-столь* as much—so much, *нѣжели* than, *чѣмъ—тѣмъ* the more—the less, *такъ-же—какъ* both—and, &c.

(6) *Conditional* (условный) or *Suppositional* (предположительный): *ѣжели, еслѣ* if, *чтобы* in order to, *дабы* in order that, *когда бы* whenever, *то бы* in order that, *то* then, therefore, &c.

(7) *Concessional* (уступительный): *хотѣ* although, *пусть* be it so, *пускай* so be it, *пожалуй* if you like, &c.

(8) *Causal* (винословный): *ибо* for, *для того что* for the reason that, because, *потому что* because, &c.

(9) *Antithetical* (противоположный): *но* but, *однако* however, *впрочѣмъ* furthermore, *а* but, &c.

(10) *Conclusive* (заключительный): итакъ thus, посему for this reason, следовательно and стало быть consequently, наконец finally, at last, &c.

To the class of disjunctive conjunctions belongs likewise the particle *ли*, which is affixed to a word in order to express a question. *Ex.* Были ли вы въ Москвѣ? *Have you* been in Moscow? Тотъ ли это домъ? *Is that* the house?

THE INTERJECTION.

§ 149. Interjections are exclamations¹ which serve to express various feelings.

§ 150. Their classification is as follows:—

- (1) of surprise: и! ахъ! ахтѣ! ба! ба! ой-ли! is it possible!
- (2) of approval: ай-да! исполать! hail! то-то? браво!
- (3) of joy: ура!
- (4) of assurance: ей-ей! право! right!
- (5) of call: эй! рей!
- (6) the answer to a call: а! ась! что! ау!
- (7) of laughter: ха! ха! хи! хи!
- (8) of indignation: тьфу! фу!
- (9) of incitement: ну! ну-те!
- (10) those which imply a proposal: на! на-те!
- (11) of fear: ой! ахтѣ!
- (12) of threat: ужъ! вотъ! добро!
- (13) of reproach: э! эхъ! ну-ужъ!
- (14) of prohibition: тсъ! цыцъ!
- (15) of sorrow and commiseration: охъ! увѣ!
- (16) of indication: вотъ! вонъ!

§ 151. Interjections likewise serve to express various sounds. *Ex.* бухъ! павъ! хлопъ! динь-динь-динь!

¹ As such exclamations are, for the most part, mere sounds, they cannot well be represented in every instance in another language. *Trans.*

SECOND PART

(Отдѣленіе Второе).

SYNTAX.

§ 152. Syntax expounds the rules for employing words so as to form intelligible speech.

§ 153. Speech is the expression of our thoughts by means of words.

§ 154. A short sentence expressed in words is called a *proposition* (предложѣніе). *Ex.* Безкорыстіе есть добродѣтель, disinterestedness is (a) virtue; гордость поро́къ, pride (is a) vice; онѣ́ будуть богаты́, they will be rich; &c.

§ 155. The proposition consists of two principal parts—the *subject* (подлежащее) and the *predicate* (сказуемое).

(1) The subject is any or everything spoken of in the proposition; such, for example, as has been indicated above in § 154, viz. безкорыстіе, гордость, онѣ́.

(2) The predicate is all that speaks of the subject; thus, in the same examples, добродѣтель, поро́къ, богаты́.

§ 156. The subject and the predicate are sometimes joined by the verb *быть*, to be, as is seen in the examples given in § 154. The verb *быть* in the forms of its present tense is, as a rule, omitted; thus, гордость поро́къ, pride (is a) vice; я бѣденъ,¹ I (am) poor; онъ богатъ,² he (is) rich.

§ 157. The subject is, generally speaking, a noun in the nominative case. *Ex.* Лѣто прошло́,³ Summer has past; Тучи закрыли со́лнце,

¹ Abbreviated form of бѣдный. *Trans.*

² Abbreviated form of богатый. *Trans.*

³ Neuter form of the adjective прошлый. *Trans.*

Clouds hid the sun ; &c. Other parts of speech may, however, take the place of a noun substantive as the subject. These are :—(a) a noun adjective or a participle : *Ех. Полѣзное предпочитается пріятному*, The *useful* is preferable to the agreeable ; *лѣнивый* не замѣчаетъ, что одно настоящее принадлежитъ намъ, The *idle (man)* does not perceive that the *present* alone belongs to us.—(b) Nouns numeral : *Ех. Тамъ тысячи пали за отчизну*, There *thousands* fell for fatherland ; &c.—(c) Pronouns : *Ех. Я пишу*, I write ; *Этотъ прилеженъ а тотъ лѣнивъ*, *This one (is)* diligent, but *that one (is)* lazy ; &c.—(d) Verbs in the infinitive mood : *Ех. Дѣлать другихъ счастливыми есть величайшее счастье*, To *make* others happy is the greatest happiness ; &c.—(e) Adverbs denoting time and place : *Сегодня тепло*, It is warm *to-day* ; *здесь весело, а тамъ скучно*, *Here (it)* is cheerful, but *there (it)* is dull. Adverbs of quantity may also represent the subject : *Ех. Много погибло и мало спаслось*, *Many* perished, and *few* were saved.—(f) In a few cases interjections : *Ех. Прогремѣло ура!* There thundered forth *hurrah!* *Раздалось браво!* *Bravo* resounded !

§ 158. The predicate may be—(a) A noun substantive in the nominative case : *Ех. Скѣка есть болѣзнь праздныхъ людей*, Weariness is the *ailment* of idle people ; &c.—(b) A noun adjective or a participle, with a shortened termination : *Ех. Вашъ опекунъ опытенъ и честенъ*, Your guardian (is) *experienced* and *honest* ; &c.—(c) A verb in the indicative or imperative mood : *Ех. Онъ читаетъ*, He *reads* ; *Помоги вамъ Богъ*, God *help* you ; &c.—(d) An adverb of quality : *Ех. Жить въ Петербургѣ пріятно, но очень дорого*, To live in St. Petersburg (is) *agreeable*, but very *expensive*.

Obs.—In a few cases a pronoun may take the place of the predicate. *Ех. Я не ты*, I (am) not *thou* ; &c.

§ 159. The subject and the predicate are called the principal parts or elements of the proposition, to which are joined the other and secondary parts that serve to illustrate and amplify the principal parts. The secondary parts consist of the *complement*, the *definition*, and the *circumstantial words*.

§ 160. The complement (дополнительное) illustrates or adds to the signification of the subject and of the predicate. It may be—(a) A noun substantive in any of the oblique cases : *Ех. Онъ любить музыку и пѣніе*, He loves *music* and *singing* ; &c.—(b) An

adjective or a participle when either of these parts of speech stands in the place of a noun substantive : *Ех. Онъ жалѣеть ионимаго и слабаго*, He pities the *persecuted* (one) and the *weak* ; &c.—(c) A personal pronoun, in any of the oblique cases, and a reflective pronoun : *Ех. Мы ожидали тебя*, We have expected *thee* ; *Онъ думаетъ о себѣ*, He thinks *of himself*.—(d) A verb in the infinitive mood : *Ех. Онъ любитъ читать*, He likes *to read* ; &c.

§ 161. The *definition* (опредѣлительное) points to the quality or to any of the attributes, both of the subject and of the predicate, as well as of the complement. The definition may be either an adjective or numeral, or a pronoun (except a personal, relative, and reflective). The definition answers to the question *какой?* of what kind? *чей?* whose? *какой?* which? *сколько?* how much? how many? *Ех. За всю эту обширную усадьбу наш богатый сосѣдъ заплатилъ сто тысячъ рублей*, For *all this vast farm* our rich neighbour paid a *hundred thousand* roubles ; &c.

§ 162. *Circumstantial words* (обстоятельствоныя слова) are expressed by the various parts of speech in the proposition which indicate *place, time, mode, and cause or object* of the action :—(a) To indicate the *place* of action the following questions serve : *гдѣ?* where? *куда?* whither? *откуда?* whence? *Ех. Онъ былъ въ Римѣ и видѣлъ тамъ папу*, He was in *Rome*, and *there* saw the Pope ; &c.—(b) To indicate the *time* of action there are the interrogatives *когда?* when? *какъ?* how? *долго-ли?* how long? *Ех. На праздникахъ онъ занятъ былъ каждый день съ утра до вечера*, During the *holidays* he was occupied *each day from morning till evening*.—(c) To indicate the *mode* of action the questions are *какъ?* how? *какимъ образомъ?* in what manner? *Ех. Онъ трудится неутомимо*, He labours *indefatigably*.—(d) To indicate the *cause or object* of the action, the questions are *почему?* why? *для чего?* for what? *зачѣмъ?* why? *отчего?* from which cause? *Ех. Всѣ вооружились для защиты отечества*, All have armed themselves *for the defence* of fatherland.

Obs.—From the examples here adduced it is apparent that nouns substantive are used in the oblique cases, both as circumstantial words as well as complements. The difference consists in this, that the latter class of words answer to the questions *кого?* *чего?* *кому?* *къмъ?* &c.; whilst the former correspond with the interrogative adverbs *гдѣ?* *куда?* *когда?* *почему?* &c.

§ 163. Nouns substantive coupled with adjectives, when found separately in the proposition, and serving to illustrate another substantive, are said to be *in apposition*. *Ex.* Петербургъ, великолѣпная столица Россіи, основанъ Петромъ Великимъ, *St. Petersburg, the magnificent capital of Russia, (was) founded by Peter the Great ; &c.*

§ 164. *Appositions* (приложѣніе) likewise have their own complements and definitions, as is apparent from the preceding example : *великолѣпная столица Россіи.*

§ 165 A proper noun, or an appellative noun, may also be used as an apposition. *Ex.* Царь Іоаннъ, *Tsar John ; Рѣка Амуръ, River Amoor ; &c.*

§ 166. *Address* expressed by the vocative case is sometimes found in the beginning, middle, or end of a proposition : *Ex.* Я ожидаю тебя, любезный другъ, *I expect thee, dear friend.* *Introductory words*, such as *Слѣва Бѣгу, Glory to God ; кажется, it seems ; можетъ быть, perhaps, &c.*, are likewise inserted : *Ex.* Вы, кажется, устали, *It seems you are tired.* Neither the *address* nor the *introductory words* enter into the composition of the proposition, and can be omitted without interfering with its sense.

§ 167. The principal parts of the proposition can also be omitted. In that case the subject or the predicate will be understood. *Ex.* Хожу по полямъ и наблюдаю за работами, *I walk along the fields and look after the works.* Here there are expressed the predicates alone, the subject я being in each case understood.

§ 168. With *impersonal* verbs the predicate is in every case expressed without the subject or a person ; hence the proposition itself is said to be *impersonal* : *Ex.* Морозитъ, *it freezes ; вѣрится, one believes ; &c.*

§ 169. Propositions, according to their construction, are *simple* or *compound*. A *simple* proposition is confined to one sentence *only*, and consists of but one subject and one predicate : *Ex.* Надѣжда улаждаетъ жизнь нашу, *Hope charms our life.* A *compound* proposition embraces two or more sentences, and is therefore made up of two or more propositions : *Ex.* Надѣжда улаждаетъ жизнь нашу, мечты украшаютъ её, а страсти сокращаютъ, *Hope charms our life, dreams embellish it, and passions shorten (it) ; &c.*

§ 170. Propositions, according to their signification, may be *principal*, *subordinate*, and *introductory*.

(1) A *principal* proposition comprises some main idea, has its own separate sense, and does not depend on any other proposition: *Ex.* Мой братъ, который недавно произведёнъ въ офицеры, отпра-вился въ походъ, *My brother, who not long ago was promoted to (be) an officer, has set out for a campaign ; &c.*

(2) A *subordinate* proposition, on the other hand, depends on the principal proposition, which it illustrates, and may be joined both to the subject and to the predicate: not so complements, definitions and circumstantial words. For instance, in the preceding example, the subordinate proposition is joined to the subject. *Subordinate* are coupled with main propositions by means of grammatical parts of speech, viz. relative pronouns, verbs in the form of participles and gerunds, adverbs of time and place, and conjunctions.

(3) An *introductory* proposition is not connected either with a main or subordinate proposition, and may be omitted without upsetting the sense of the passage in which it occurs. *Ex.* Вы, я думаю, скоро кончите дѣло, *You, I think, will soon finish (your) business.* An introductory proposition cannot be placed at the beginning of a sentence: if it is so placed it becomes the principal, and what was the principal is turned into the subordinate proposition; thus, Я думаю что вы скоро кончите дѣло. Here я думаю has become the main proposition, and the rest of the sentence has been turned into a subordinate proposition.

§ 171. To a principal or to a subordinate proposition is sometimes joined a *quoted* proposition, comprising some lengthy passage introduced without change: *Ex.* Императоръ Алексѣандръ I. сказалъ народу, “Я вступаю не врагомъ а возвращаю вамъ миръ и торговлю,” *The Emperor Alexander I. said to the people, “I come not as an enemy, but to restore to you peace and commerce.”*

§ 172. Propositions, according to variety of expression, may be—

(1) *Narrative*, or such as contain the illustration of any sort of subject, or simply a tale concerning it: *Ex.* мечъ былъ первымъ властelinомъ людей, но одни законы могли быть основанiемъ ихъ гражданскаго счѣтія, *The sword was the first sovereign of the*

people, but the laws alone could be the foundation of their civic happiness.

(2) *Interrogative*, or such as suggest questions :—*Ex.* Зачѣмъ проходимъ мы безъ вниманія мимо трудоваго земледѣльца, проливающаго потъ надъ собственною полосою, Why do we pass by without notice the labours of an agriculturist who pours out his sweat over his own strip of land ?

(3) *Exclamatory*, or those which give utterance to a cry of surprise, or of some strong feeling : *Ex.* Двадцать три милліона христіанскихъ душъ призываются къ новой жизни, къ сознанію своего человѣческаго достоинства ! Twenty-three millions of Christian souls are called to a new life, to the recognition of their own human worth !

(4) *Imperative*, which express a wish, command, or prohibition : *Ex.* Награждайте добродѣтель, просвѣщайте людѣй, усовершенствуйте воспитаніе, Reward virtue, enlighten the people, perfect education.

Obs.—Imperative propositions may be—(a) *impressive*, or those giving expression to a precise injunction. The construction of such entails the addition of the conjunction *же* to the imperative mood : *Ex.* читай же громче, read (thou) louder ; &c.—(b) *softening*, or such as are employed in ordinary conversation and in popular phraseology. These are formed by means of the addition of the particle *ка* to the imperative mood : *Ex.* Скажи ка мнѣ, Prithee tell me ; &c.

(5) *Hypothetical* or *conditional*, or such as are formed by the addition of the conjunction *бы* to the past tense of a verb : *Ex.* Когда бы вы познакомились съ нимъ, то полюбили бы его, Had you become acquainted with him, you would have liked him ; &c.

§ 173. Compound propositions are formed—

(1) By coupling one principal proposition with another by means of conjunctions. *Ex.* На Бога уповай, а самъ не плошай, Hope in God, and be not careless ; &c.

(2) By coupling *principal* with *subordinate* propositions, by means of the various grammatical parts of speech (*vide* § 170) :

Ex. Исторія есть наука, которая изображаетъ въ связномъ разсказѣ существенныя перемѣны въ жизни народовъ или государствъ, History is the science which depicts in a connected narrative the actual changes in the life of peoples or of sovereignties. A subordinate proposition may occur at the beginning of a sentence: *Ex.* Если не сумѣешь сказать въ немногихъ словахъ того, чѣмъ полно сердце, то много-рѣчіемъ только разведёшь водою собственное чувство, *If thou canst not say in a few words that with which (thy) heart (is) full*, then with much speech thou only dilutest thine own feeling with water; &c.

§ 174. Speech is formed by coupling simple or compound propositions possessing some connection of their own.

§ 175. Speech is either *periodical* or *abrupt*.—*Periodical* speech consists of several compound propositions. *Ex.* Я готовился быть свидѣтелемъ торжества великолѣпнаго: но торжество, видѣнное мною превзошло моё ожиданіе. Такоё же чувство, какое потрясло мою душу, когда представились мнѣ въ первый разъ Альпы, когда и увидѣлъ Римъ посреди его запусѣвшей равнины, когда подходилъ ко храму Святѣго Петра, и остановился подъ его изумительнымъ свѣдомъ. I made myself ready to be a witness of a magnificent triumph: but the triumph which I saw exceeded my expectation. The same sort of feeling agitated my mind when the Alps were presented to me for the first time, when I saw Rome amidst her (*lit.* its) desolated ruins, when I came beneath the temple of St. Peter, and remained beneath its amazing vault; &c.—*Abrupt* speech consists of several simple principal propositions, coupled by grammatical parts of speech. *Ex.* чувство усталости исчезло: силы мои возновились: дыханіе моё стало легко. The feeling of fatigue disappeared: my strength was renewed: my breathing became easy, &c.

§ 176. Syntax embraces the rules: (1) of the *concord* (согласованіе); (2) *government* (управленіе); (3) *arrangement* (размѣщеніе), of words; and (4) *punctuation* (препинаніе).

I. CONCORD OF WORDS.

§ 177. Concord of words signifies their regular coupling in all parts of the proposition.

§ 178. The most important rules under this head are the following :—

(1) The subject and the predicate, when expressed by declinable parts of speech, agree in case, but in gender and number they may differ when the predicate is a noun substantive : *Ех. Калмыки нарóдѣ кочýющій, The Kalmucks, a nomad race, &c.*

(2) When the verb *быть* indicates a temporary condition, the predicate is used in the instrumental case : *Ех. Братъ мой тогда былъ кадѣтомъ, My brother was then a cadet ; Пѣрвые бýдутъ послѣдними и послѣдніе пѣрвыми, The first shall be last, and the last first ; &c.*

(3) A predicate expressed by a verb or participle with a shortened termination always agrees with the subject in gender, number and person : *Ех. Домъ проданъ, the house has been sold ; деревня куплена, the village has been bought ; письма отпрáвлены, the letters have been despatched ; &c.*

(4) Definitions agree with those words which they define in gender, number and case : *Ех. многіе дѣкіе нарóды поклоняются небеснымъ свѣтіламъ, many wild races worship the heavenly luminaries ; &c.*

(5) An apposition agrees with its substantive in case, whilst it may differ from it in gender and number : *Ех. Желѣзо, полезнѣйшій метáлъ, находится у насъ въ изобѣлїи, Iron, a most useful metal, is found with us in great abundance ; &c.*

(6) When there are two nouns (an *appellative* and a *proper*) in apposition signifying one and the same object, but of a different gender and number, the predicate agrees as to these with the appellative noun : *Ех. Гóродъ Аѣны славился въ дрѣвности, The town of Athens was famous in antiquity ; &c.*

(7) In the case of titles, such as *Велѣчество Majesty, Высóчество Highness, Свѣтлость Serene Highness, &c.*, the words defined by them agree with them in gender : *Ех. Имперáторское Велѣчество, Imperial Majesty ; Вáша Свѣтлость, Your Serene Highness, &c. ;—but the predicates belonging to them agree in gender with the personage to whom the title relates : Ех. Егó Имперáторское Велѣчество изво́илъ возвратиться изъ Москвѣ, His Imperial Majesty was pleased to return from Moscow ; Ея Королѣвское Высóчество посѣ-*

шала всѣ высшія учебныя заведенія, Her Royal Highness visited all the high schools; Его Свѣтлость былъ занятъ цѣлый день важными дѣлами, His Serene Highness was engaged the whole day with important business; &c.

(8) If there are two or more substantives of different genders, and one of these is of the masculine gender, the definition will also be of the masculine gender: *Ex.* Онъ принёсъ вамъ *новыя* планы, кнѣги и ландкарты, *купленные* по вашему желанію, He brought you the *new* plans, books and maps *bought* according to your desire.

(9) If two or more definitions relate to the same object, then both the subject and the predicate are put in the plural number: *Ex.* Бѣлое и Азѳовское морья *находятся* въ предѣлахъ Россіи, The White Sea and the Sea of Azoff *are situated* in the confines of Russia; &c.

(10) When several objects are referred to, and their general number is expressed by the pronouns *всѣ* or *ничто*, the predicate is placed in the *singular* number: *Ex.* *Всѣ* ему *прáвилось*, *всѣ* *восхищало* его, *everything pleased, everything charmed* him; Ни просьбы, ни мольбы, ни слёзы несчастныхъ — *ничто* не могло его тронуть, Neither the requests nor the prayers nor the tears of the unfortunate—*nothing could touch* him.

(11) A separate object relating to any of *two or more* persons spoken of in the proposition is placed in the singular instead of the plural number: *Ex.* Послѣ такой неудачи, оба брата повѣсили носъ (not носы), After such misfortune, both brothers became discouraged (*lit.*, hung down their *noses*); &c.

(12) The verb *быть* in the present tense does not always agree with the subject in number, and is sometimes placed in the singular, although the subject be in the plural number: *Ex.* У меня *есть* рѣдкія картины, *I have rare pictures*, &c.

(13) When the verb *быть* in the past tense is found between two substantives of different genders, it must agree in gender with the first, and not with the second. *Ex.* Пётръ *былъ* рѣзвое и веселое дитя, Peter *was* a playful and merry child.

(14) When the subject is represented by the adverbs of quantity—много, much, many; мало, little; нѣсколько, some, several; сколько, how much, how many; столько, so much, so

many—the predicate is placed in the neuter gender and singular number. *Ex.* Въ́ этомъ сраженіи́ уби́то нѣско́лько офице́ровъ, In this engagement *several* officers (were) *killed*.

(15) The words мно́жесвто, multitude, бо́льшая часть, greater part, ма́лая часть, lesser part, require the verb or predicate to be in the singular number : *Ex.* Тамъ собра́лось мно́жество солда́тъ, There were *collected* a *multitude* of soldiers ; Бо́льшая часть́ на́шихъ товарищей произведе́на въ офице́ры, *The greater part* of our comrades were *promoted* to officers.

(16) Verbs which relate to one object must be put in the same tense and aspect : *Ex.* Онъ сѣ́лъ за сто́лъ, поду́малъ, написа́лъ рѣ́шительный отвѣ́тъ и отпра́вилъ его́ къ проси́телю, He *sat down* at the table, *thought* a little, *wrote* a decisive answer, and *sent* it off to the petitioner ;—but when there are adverbs or conjunctions with the verbs, different aspects may be used : *Ex.* Онъ сѣ́лъ за сто́лъ, до́лго ду́малъ, пото́мъ ста́лъ пи́сать отвѣ́тъ и наконѣ́цъ отпра́вилъ его́ къ проси́телю, He *sat down* at the table, *thought* for a long time, then *began* to write an answer, and *finally despatched* it to the petitioner.

(17) A gerund in a subordinate, and a verb in a main, proposition must express the action of one and the same person : *Ex.* Получи́въ пи́сьмо, я написа́лъ отвѣ́тъ, On receiving the letter, I wrote the answer, &c. Therefore it would be irregular to say, Стоя́ на горѣ́, глаза́ мои́ восхища́лись прекра́снымъ ви́домъ, Standing on the mountain, my eyes were enchanted with the beautiful sight,—instead of Стоя́ на горѣ́, я восхища́лся прекра́снымъ ви́домъ, Stand on the mountain, I was enchanted with the beautiful sight ; &c.

II. THE GOVERNMENT OF WORDS.

§ 179. In the government of words are explained the various relations between the principal and the secondary parts of the proposition.

§ 180. These relations show the dependence of one word on another, and such words are said to be *governing*, and *governed* or *subordinate* : *Ex.* Шумъ бу́ри, образова́ние се́рдца, &c. ; the noise of the tempest, the formation of the heart, &c. Here the words шумъ and образова́ние are the governing words, whilst бу́ри and се́рдца are the governed words, or those dependent thereon.

§ 181. The principal rules in the government of words are contained in the subjoined use of the oblique cases with and without prepositions. The nominative and vocative cases being *direct*, do not depend on other words, and therefore are not subject to government.

(a.) *Use of the Cases without Prepositions.*

§ 182. The genitive case answers to the questions, *кого?* of whom? *чего?* of what? *чей?* *чья?* *чьё?* whose? and is used—

(1) Where there are two nouns substantive in a complementary phrase: *Ex.* Меня изумила высота горъ, The height of the mountains astonished me; &c. A complement is sometimes used in the dative instead of in the genitive case: *Ex.* Здѣсь назначена цѣна мѣстамъ, Here (is) noted the prices to the places; &c. In certain masculine nouns signifying quantity, the termination of the genitive case is changed into that of the dative: *Ex.* Я купилъ пудъ сахара и фунтъ чая, I bought a pood (36 lbs.) of sugar and a pound of tea (*vide* § 39). Nouns substantive in the genitive case can be changed into nouns adjective: *Ex.* Лучъ солнца, A ray of sun; солнечный лучъ, solar ray; &c.

(2) In the case of nouns substantive derived from active verbs which require the accusative case: *Ex.* Чтѣніе полезныхъ книгъ способствуетъ къ образованію ума, The reading of useful books aids in the education of the understanding; &c. Certain nouns derived from neuter verbs also require the genitive case: *Ex.* Въ минеральныхъ источникахъ происходитъ кипѣніе воды, In mineral sources the boiling of water takes place; &c.

(3) In indications of quantity, measure, and weight: *Ex.* У насъ много работы а мало времени, We have much work, but little time.

(4) After nouns adjective of the comparative degree: *Ex.* Старый другъ лучше новыхъ двухъ, An old friend (is) better than two new ones; &c.

(5) In the case of nouns adjective indicating merit, strangeness, fullness: *Ex.* Достойный уваженія, worthy of respect; чуждый гордости, free from pride; онъ получилъ кошелёкъ полный денегъ, He received a purse full of money.

(6) In the case of the numerals полтора, два, оба, три, четыре, and their compounds, such as двадцать два, сорокъ три, &c., the genitive case is placed in the singular number: *Ex.* полтора рубля,

1½ *roubles*; два *стола́*, two *tables*; оба *бра́та*, both *brothers*; три *кни́ги*, three *books*; четы́ре *сте́кла*, four *panes of glass*; пять-десять три *солда́та*, fifty-three *soldiers*, &c.; but with all the other numerals the genitive case plural is used: *Ех.* Пять *столо́въ*, вóсемь *бра́тѣвъ*, сто *сте́колъ*, ты́сяча *кни́гъ*, five *tables*, eight *brothers*, 100 *panes of glass*, 1000 *books*, &c.

(7) In the case of the numerals два, оба, три, четы́ре, and their compounds, the adjective is used in the nominative case of the plural number, and in the same gender as that to which the substantive in question belongs: *Ех.* Его́ три послѣднія сочинѣ́нiя имѣ́ли большо́й успѣ́хъ, His *three last compositions* had a great success; &c. In the case of all the other numerals, beginning with five, the adjective and the substantive must agree in number and case: *Ех.* Семь послѣднихъ сочинѣ́нiи, the seven last compositions; &c.

(8) In the case of active verbs, when their action extends to a part only of the object: *Ех.* Дай́ мнѣ́ де́негъ, Give me *some money*. With such verbs are always understood adverbs of quantity, such as *немно́го*, *little*, *few*; *нѣско́лько*, *some*, *several*; &c.

(9) In the case of active verbs with the negative adverb *не*, *not*: *Ех.* Я *не* люблю́ прáздности, I do *not* like idleness; &c. The genitive case is also used when the negative precedes the verb which comes before the governing verb: *Ех.* Ты *не* хотѣ́лъ чита́ть э́той кни́ги, Thou didst *not* desire to read *this book*.

(10) Active, reflective, and common verbs implying *wish*, *expectation*, *deprivation*, *fear*, *danger*, require the genitive case: *Ех.* Я *жела́ю* вамъ успѣ́ха въ ва́шемъ дѣ́лѣ, I *wish* you *success* in your business; Онъ до́лго *жда́лъ* наира́ды, He long *expected* a reward; Вы *лиши́ли* мен́я удово́льствiя видѣ́ть васъ, You have *deprived* me of the *satisfaction* of seeing (*lit.* to see) you; Я *опа́саясь* пожа́ра а ты бо́ишся наводне́нiя, I *dread* a *fire*, and thou *fearest* an *inundation*; &c.

(11) The following verbs also govern the genitive case:—требова́ть, to require; достига́ть, to attain; сто́ить, to cost; отвѣ́дывать, to test; домога́ться, to solicit; слýшаться, to obey; стыди́ться, to be ashamed of; and certain others of similar signification, which answer to the questions *кого́?* *чего́?*

(12) The genitive case is required after adverbs denoting *place*, such as *возлѣ́*, *beside*; *подлѣ́*, *near*; *близъ́*, *near*; *вдо́ль*, *along*;

внѣ, outside ; внутрі, inside ; снару́жи, on the outside ; мѣ́мо, by ; о́коло, near ; and others after which are put the questions *кого́ ?* *чего́ ?*

§ 183. The dative case answers to the questions *кому́ ?* *чему́ ?* and is used—

(1) With certain active verbs, such as *подража́ть*, to copy ; *помо́чь*, to aid ; *служи́ть*, to serve ; *угоджа́ть*, to please ; *повреди́ть*, to harm ; *сопу́тствовать*, to travel with ; &c.

(2) With certain reflective and common verbs, such as *удивля́ться*, to be surprised at ; *ра́доваться*, to rejoice at ; *предаться*, to give one's self up to ; *моли́ться*, to worship ; *жа́ловаться*, to complain to ; *нра́виться*, to please ; &c.

(3) With the impersonal verbs, such as *жа́ль*, it is a pity ; *сты́дно*, it is shameful ; *хо́чется*, one desires ; *на́добно*, it is necessary ; *ну́жно*, it is needful ; &c.

(4) When the complement is a personal object indicating *relationship, friendship, enmity*, &c. : *Ех. Онъ мнѣ дѣ́дя, ты е́му дру́гъ*, He (is) *uncle to me*, thou (art a) *friend to him* ; *Онъ Петру́ большо́й непри́ятель*, He is a *great enemy to Peter* ; &c.

(5) With the adverbs *прили́чно*, becoming ; *соотве́тственно*, corresponding to ; *сообра́зно*, conformably to ; &c.

(6) The following adverbs likewise require the dative case. *вопреки́*, contrary to ; *на-злѡ́*, despite ; *на-смѣ́хъ*, in derision of ; *на-переко́ръ*, in spite of ; *въ-у́году*, for the pleasure of ; &c.

§ 184. The accusative case answers to the questions *кого́ ?* *что́ ?* and is used—

(1) As a complement, after active verbs without a negative : *Ех. Онъ купи́лъ рѣ́дкую кни́гу*, He *bought a rare book* ; &c.

(2) As a complement, after neuter verbs indicating a known *distance or time* : *Ех. Онъ бѣ́жалъ цѣ́лую ве́рсту*, He *ran a whole verst* ; *мы не спали́ всю́ ночь*, We *did not sleep the whole night* ; &c.

§ 185. The instrumental case answers to the questions *кѣ́мъ ?* *чѣ́мъ ?* and is used—

(1) With all the passive verbs : *Ех. Онъ бы́лъ люби́мъ все́ми товари́щами*, He *was beloved by all his comrades* ; &c.

(2) With the reciprocal verbs, followed by the preposition *съ*:
Ex. Наши войска храбро сражались *съ* неприятелями, Our troops bravely engaged *with* the enemy ; &c.

(3) With certain of the reflective and the common verbs, such as *заниматься*, to occupy one's self ; *умываться*, to wash one's self ; *гордиться*, to pride one's self ; *восхищаться*, to be charmed with ; *любоваться*, to delight in ; &c.

(4) With verbs indicating *power, management, arrangement*, such as *владѣть*, to rule ; *управлять*, to govern ; *распоряжаться*, to dispose ; *завѣдывать*, to manage ; *обладать*, to possess ; *располагать*, to place ; &c.

(5) The following verbs likewise require the instrumental case: *дорожить*, to prize ; *жертвовать*, to sacrifice ; *обилловать*, to abound in ; *страдать*, to suffer ; &c.

(6) Nouns substantive derived from verbs which govern the instrumental case require that the words subordinate to them should also be in the same case : *Ex.* распоряженіе *имуществомъ*, the distribution *of property* ; завѣдываніе *дѣлами*, the management *of affairs* ; &c.

§ 186. The prepositional case is always used with prepositions. With the prepositional case are used many verbs answering to the questions *о комъ ? о чёмъ ? въ чёмъ ? при чёмъ ?* such as *думать*, to think about ; *мечтать*, to reflect ; *сожалѣть*, to regret ; *печалиться*, to grieve ; *забѣтиться*, to busy one's self ; *хлопотать*, to bustle ; *упражняться*, to occupy one's self ; *находиться*, to be situated ; *состоять*, to consist of ; &c.

§ 187. Certain verbs require various cases. The more frequently used of such are the following :—

(1) *жалѣть*, to pity ; *просить*, to beg ; which require the genitive or the prepositional.

(2) *удовлетворять*, to satisfy ; *покровительствовать*, to protect ; which require the dative and the accusative. The dative when the action relates to an intellectual object : *Ex.* *удовлетворять желанію*, *любопытству*, to satisfy *desire, curiosity* ; *покровительствовать наукамъ* и *художествамъ*, to encourage *the sciences and arts*. The accusative with a personal object : *Ex.* *удовлетворить просителя*, to satisfy the *petitioner* ; *покровительствовать бѣдныхъ сиротъ*, to protect *poor orphans*, &c.

(3) In the case of the verbs учить, to teach, and обучать, to train, the personal noun is placed in the accusative, and the object of the action in the dative, case: *Ех. Онъ учить мою сестру музыкѣ*, He teaches *my sister music*, &c.

(4) The verb слѣдовать, to follow, governs the dative and the instrumental. The former, where intellectual nouns are concerned: *Ех. Слѣдовать добрымъ примѣрамъ и совѣтамъ*, To follow *good examples and counsels*. It requires all other nouns to be in the instrumental case, before which is used the preposition за: *Ех. воины слѣдуютъ за своимъ полководцемъ*, The soldiers *follow (after) their leader*, &c.

(5) The verbs испрашивать, to ask for, заслуживать, to deserve, искать, to seek, when used in the present tense, and in the imperfect aspect of the past and future tenses, require the genitive case; but when used in the perfect aspect they govern the accusative case: *Ех. Онъ спрашиваетъ, or испрашиваетъ, вашею согласія*, He asks, or he asked, for *your consent*; *Онъ просилъ, or проситъ, ваше согласіе*, He asked, or will ask, for *your consent*; &c.

(6) The following verbs govern the accusative and the instrumental cases:—презирать, to despise; бросать, to throw; вертѣть, to turn; промышленъ, to deal; торговать, to trade; брызгать, to sprinkle.

(7) The verb удостоивать, which requires the genitive case, sometimes governs the instrumental case also: *Ех. удостоить награды и милости*, to bestow *rewards and favours*; *Государь удостоилъ его своимъ разговоромъ*, The sovereign honoured him *with his conversation*; &c.

(8) The verb наблюдать, to observe, when it suggests the question что?, requires the accusative case: *Ех. наблюдать порядокъ и чистоту*, to observe *order and cleanliness*; and when it suggests the questions за чѣмъ? за кѣмъ? it takes the instrumental case, with the preposition за: *Ех. наблюдать за порядкомъ и за чистотою*, to look *after order and cleanliness*.

Obs.—The rules of government, to which a verb is subject, remain the same when that verb is changed into another part of speech: *Ех. Онъ достигъ своей цѣли*, He attained his *object*; *достигающій цѣли*, one who attains (his) *object*; *достиженіе цѣли*, the attainment of an *object*; &c. But nouns

substantive, derived from active verbs which require the accusative case, govern the genitive, as already stated in § 182: *Ех. стро́ение до́ма, чтéние кни́ги, the building of the house, the reading of the book.* Others, again, govern the dative, with the preposition *къ*: *Ех. почтéние къ родíteлямъ, уважéние къ стáршимъ, reverence to parents, respect to elders; &c.*

(9) The verb *благодарить* requires the accusative case, whilst words derived from it govern the dative: *Ех. Я благодарю́ Бо́га, I thank God; благодарéние Бо́гу, thanks to God; благодаря́ своему́ дядю́, онъ уплати́лъ всѣ долги́, thanks to his uncle, he paid all his debts.*

(b) *Use of the Cases with Prepositions.*

§ 188. The government of the oblique cases likewise depends on prepositions:—

(1) The prepositions *безъ, для, ра́ди, до, изъ, отъ, у,* and their compounds *изъ за, изъ-подъ,* always require the genitive case.

(2) *Къ (ко)* governs the dative case.

(3) *Про, чрезъ (чере́зъ), сквозъ,* the accusative.

(4) *Надъ,* the instrumental.

(5) *При,* the prepositional.

(6) The prepositional adverb *ме́жду (межъ)* requires the genitive and the instrumental: *Ех. Этотъ го́родъ лежи́тъ ме́жду двухъ рѣкъ, or ме́жду двумя́ рѣ́ками, This town lies between two rivers; &c.*

(7) When *за* answers to the question *куда?* whither? it requires the accusative: *Ех. за рѣ́ку, за́ море, beyond the river, beyond the sea.* But when it answers to the question *идь?* where? it governs the instrumental: *Ех. за рѣ́кою, за́ моремъ.* Likewise, when it answers to the question *за что?* for what? it requires the accusative case: *Ех. Ты былъ наказанъ за лѣ́ность, а онъ получи́лъ награ́ду за прилежа́ние, Thou wast punished for idleness, and he received a reward for industry.*

(8) When *подъ* answers to the question *куда?* whither? it requires the accusative: *Ех. Онъ сѣ́лъ подѣ́ дре́во, He took a seat under the tree.* But when it answers to the question *гдѣ?* where?

it governs the instrumental : *Ex.* онъ сидѣтъ *подъ дѣревомъ*, he is sitting *under the tree*.

(9) Предъ or передъ requires both the accusative and the instrumental : *Ex.* Онъ предсталъ *предъ Госудáря* or *предъ Госудáремъ*, He presented himself *before the sovereign*. With inanimate and abstract objects, this preposition is more often used in the instrumental case : *Ex.* Онъ явился *предъ ѱородомъ*, He appeared *before the town* ; Онъ правъ *предъ своѣю совѣстью*, He (is) right *in his own conscience* ; &c.

(10) When въ (во) answers to the question куда? whither? it requires the accusative : *Ex.* Онъ пошёлъ *въ поле*, He went *into the field*. But when it answers to the question гдѣ? where? it governs the prepositional : *Ex.* Онъ гуляетъ *въ полѣ*, he takes a walk *in the field*. The preposition въ (во) with certain verbs indicating promotion, bestowal of rank or reward, under any conditions whatever, requires the accusative case of the plural number, and that case must in such instances be like the nominative : *Ex.* Произвѣсть *въ офицеры*, to promote to (be an) officer ; назначить *въ кандидаты*, to appoint (as) candidate ; &c.

(11) When на answers to the questions куда? whither? на корó? on whom? на чтó? on what? it requires the accusative case : *Ex.* Онъ отпра́вился *на островъ*, He set out *for the island* ; Я на́дѣюсь *на вашу дружбу*, I rely *on your friendship*. But when the same preposition answers to the questions гдѣ? where? на комъ? on whom? на чемъ? on what (implying rest)? it governs the prepositional : *Ex.* Горá Этна находится *на островѣ Сици́лии*, Mount Etna is situated in (*lit. on*) the island of Sicily ; &c.

(12) When о (объ) answers to the questions о что or обо что? against what? it requires the accusative : *Ex.* Онъ ушибся *о камень*, He hurt himself *against the stone*. But when it answers to the questions о комъ? about whom? о чёмъ? about what? it governs the prepositional case : *Ex.* Онъ говоритъ *о камнѣ*, He speaks *about the stone* ; &c.

(13) When съ (со) answers to the question съ черó? from off what? it requires the genitive case : *Ex.* Онъ упалъ *съ лошади*, He fell from off the horse. When it answers to the question съ корó? like whom? со что? like what? indicating comparison, it requires the accusative : *Ex.* Величи́ною съ ло́шадь, In size *like a horse* ? &c. When, again, it answers to the questions съ кѣмъ? with whom? съ

чѣмъ? with what? it governs the instrumental: *Ex.* Онъ купилъ сани съ лошадью, He bought a sledge *with* a horse; &c.

(14) When *по* answers to the questions по чѣмъ? over what? and по чѣмъ? at what rate? it requires the dative case: *Ex.* Онъ гуляетъ по полу, He walks *on* the floor; Я плачѹ по рублю, I pay *at the rate of* a rouble. But when it answers to the question по что? up to what? it governs the accusative: *Ex.* Онъ ушѣлъ въ воду по сáмю шею, He went into the water *up to* (his) very neck. When, again, this preposition answers to the question по комъ? after whom? it governs the prepositional: *Ex.* Онъ плачетъ по отцѣ, He cries *after* (his) father. When *по* is used in the sense of послѣ, after, it likewise takes the prepositional case: *Ex.* По смѣрти Петра Великаго, *After* the death of Peter the Great; &c.

III. THE PLACING OF WORDS.

§ 189. The placing or arrangement of words shows the order in which they should follow when used in speech.

§ 190. In the arrangement of words in a proposition, that order must infallibly be adhered to in which our thoughts succeed each other. The more closely we keep to the ordinary conversational style in the arrangement of our words, the more natural, easy, and clear, will be our expressions.

§ 191. This very style, the use of which is maintained by cultivated writers, comprises the observance of the following most important rules:—

(1) The principal object in our sentence should be placed first of all, *i.e.* first should come the *subject*, then the *action* of the subject, or the *predicate*, and lastly the *complement*: *Ex.* Пётръ основалъ Петербургъ, Peter founded St. Petersburg; &c. Speech should begin with those words which most occupy our thoughts: *Ex.* Грѣнулъ сильный громъ, *Rumbled* the loud thunder; &c.

(2) Sometimes before the principal portion of the proposition the secondary parts are placed, as these serve to prepare the way for the main object of the narrative: *Ex.* Въ тѣни высокой липы, на берегу Москвы рѣки, лежали на травѣ два молодые человѣка, *In the shade of a tall lime tree, on the bank of the river Moscow*, two young men lay on the grass.

(3) Where there are many definitions placed together, the following order should be observed: first the *pronoun*, then the

numeral, after these the *adjective or participle*, and last of all the *noun substantive* : *Ех.* Тѣ два бѣдные брѣта имѣють хорошія способности, Those two poor brothers have good abilities ; &c.

(4) A *qualifying noun adjective* is always placed before a *possessive adjective* : *Ех.* Богѣтая золотѣя шпѣра, a *rich golden sword*. And *circumstantial adjectives* are placed before both *qualifying and possessive adjectives* : *Ех.* Здѣшнее пріятное общество, the *local pleasant society* ; &c.

(5) *Cardinal numerals* are placed before a *noun substantive* : *Ех.* Ему́ отъ роду сѣмьдесятъ лѣтъ, He is *seventy* years old. To merely express a number *approximately*, the numeral may be placed after the substantive : *Ех.* Ему́ отъ роду лѣтъ сѣмьдесятъ, He is *about seventy* years old.

(6) *Ordinal numerals* are placed before cardinal : *Ех.* Первые два часа, the *first* two hours.

(7) From the *juxta-position* of cases similar in termination an irregularity, and even a confusion of expression, ensues : *Ех.* Онъ почитѣлся всѣмъ во́йскомъ опытнымъ и хра́брымъ полковѣдцемъ, He was considered *by* all the troops an experienced and brave leader. In order to avoid such a fault, the words must either be transposed or their cases changed : *Ех.* Онъ почитѣлся во всѣмъ во́йскѣ опытнымъ и хра́брымъ полковѣдцемъ, He was considered *in* the whole army, &c.

(8) Verbs should not be placed at the end of the proposition : *Ех.* Онъ разныя нау́ки зна́етъ, He *knows* various sciences. Instead of this, the sentence should stand thus, Онъ зна́етъ, &c., He *knows*, &c. This rule may only be departed from when the whole emphasis of the phrase is contained in the verb : *Ех.* Дѣбрыхъ людѣй хва́лятъ, а злыхъ презира́ютъ, Good people are *praised*, but wicked (people) are *despised* ; &c.

(9) Adverbs of *quality* are placed before a verb when a complement or a subordinate proposition is attached to it : *Ех.* Крыловъ отлѣчно писѣлъ басни, котѣрыя, безъ сомнѣнія, вы читѣли нѣскольکو разъ, Krwiloff wrote fables excellently, which doubtless you have read several times. But when the verb is unaccompanied by a complement, adverbs may be placed after it : *Ех.* Крыловъ писѣлъ отлѣчно, Krwiloff wrote *excellently*.

(10) An adverb must infallibly be placed before that word which it qualifies : *Ех.* Онъ совершенно́ кончилъ но́вый переводъ, He has *completely* finished (his) new translation, &c. If this rule is not

observed, and if the adverb is transposed, an altogether contrary signification will result: *Ex.* Онъ кончилъ совершенно новый переводъ, He has finished (his) *perfectly* new translation.

(11) The negative adverb *не* must be placed before that word to which the negation refers: *Ex.* Онъ *не* сегодня былъ у брата а вчера, He was *not* at (his) brother's to-day, but yesterday. The following arrangement would therefore be irregular: Онъ *не* былъ сегодня у брата а вчера. A similar rule must be observed with all words used in the sense of adverbs. Such should infallibly be placed before the words to which they relate: *Ex.* Извѣстите меня, по-крайней мѣрѣ, о здоровьѣ вашемъ, Inform me, at least, about your health. This sentence would have a directly contrary signification were it to be thus written: извѣстите, по крайней мѣрѣ, меня, &c., Inform *me* at least, &c.

(12) In the construction of conditional or prepositional propositions with impersonal verbs, or with adverbs, to the conjunction *бы* is added the past tense of the verb *быть*: *Ex.* Вамъ полезно было бы прогуливаться, *It would have been* useful to you to take an airing. Many offend against this rule by expressing the phrase thus: Вамъ полезно *бы* прогуливаться.

(13) The conjunction *бы* must not be used in one and the same proposition: *Ex.* Если *бы* я такъ коротко не зналъ *бы* васъ, то не повѣрилъ *бы* вамъ, If I *had* not so intimately known you, I *would not have* believed you. Here the conjunction *бы* should only be inserted in the first proposition, after the word *если*.

(14) One and the same word should not be often repeated, especially if that word be a pronoun: *Ex.* Онъ выкупилъ ихъ, взялъ ихъ къ себѣ, кормилъ ихъ какъ своихъ дѣтей, и отослалъ ихъ къ родителямъ ихъ, He bought *them*, took *them* to himself, as *his own* children, and sent *them* away to *their* parents.

(15) Words, the signification of which is contained in the preceding word, must not be repeated: *Ex.* Сегодняшній день наша работа долго продолжалась, *To-day's day* our work *was long continued*,—should be Сегодня наша работа была продолжительна, *To-day* our work, &c. Such a fault is called a *pleonasm*.

(16) Expressions should not be turned in a way that is foreign to the Russian language: *Ex.* Вы слишкомъ ещё молоды, чтобы занять столь важную должность, You are still too young to undertake such an important duty. Such turnings of phrase appertain to the

French language. In Russian they should be expressed thus : вы ещё так молоды, что не можете занять, &c. An error of this kind is called a *gallicism*.

IV. PUNCTUATION.

§ 192. The signs of punctuation serve to illustrate the coupling or disconnecting of propositions and their parts.

§ 193. *The signs of punctuation* (знакъ препинанія) are:— (1) *comma*, запятая (,) — (2) *semicolon*, точка съ запятой (;) — (3) *colon*, двоеточіе (:) — (4) *full stop*, точка (.) — (5) *point of suspension*, многоточіе (.) — (6) *note of admiration*, знакъ восклицательный (!) — (7) *note of interrogation*, знакъ вопросительный (?) — (8) *hyphen*, черта or тире (-) — (9) *parenthesis*, скобка or знакъ вмѣстительный () — (10) *inverted commas*, двузаятая or вносный знакъ (“ ”).

§ 194. The *comma* is placed—

(1) Between two or more subjects and predicates which are not connected by conjunctions : *Ex.* Везувій, Этна и Гекла суть огнедышащія горы въ Европѣ, Vesuvius, Etna and Hecla are the volcanic mountains of (*lit. in*) Europe ; &c.

(2) When the following conjunctions are repeated, *и, ни, или* : *Ex.* И дождь, и снѣгъ, шли, *Both rain and snow fell*, &c. ; Онъ не умѣетъ ни читать, ни писать, He can *neither* read *nor* write ; Вы или не могли, или не хотѣли этого сдѣлать, You *either* could not, *or* did not wish, to do this.

(3) When the conjunction *и* couples the main propositions with the various subjects : *Ex.* Въ тотъ день разразилась ужасная буря, и проливной дождь затопилъ многія улицы, On that day broke a terrible storm, *and* heavy rain flooded many streets. But when the conjunction *и* couples two principal propositions which relate to one and the same subject, the comma is not inserted : *Ex.* Тамъ свирѣпствовала сильная буря и производила страшныя опустошенія, There a violent storm raged *and* produced frightful desolation.

(4) A comma is placed before the conjunction *и* when the latter of two propositions comprises the *result of the first*, and when after the conjunction *и* are understood the conjunctions *потому, оттого* : *Ex.* Я сегодня много ходилъ, и (оттого) усталъ, I have walked much to-day, *and (hence)* I am tired, &c.

(5) If for the conjunction *и* the conjunctions *какъ и, такъ и, can*

be substituted, then a comma is not placed before *и*: *Ех.* Труды доставили ему *и* славу *и* состояніе, (His) labours brought him *both* fame and fortune,—instead of *какъ* славу, *такъ и* состояніе.

(6) Before the conjunction *или*, when it signifies explanation: *Ех.* Гельвѣція, *или* Швейцарія страна гористая, Helvetia or Switzerland (is a) mountainous country. But when *или* is used in a disjunctive sense, the comma is not used: *Ех.* Онъ желалъ бы ѣхать въ Германію *или* Италію, He wished that he might go to Germany or to Italy.

(7) In short propositions before the conjunctions *а* and *но*: *Ех.* Онъ приходилъ къ вамъ, *но* вы уже уѣхали, He came to you, but you had already gone away; &c.

(8) With two or more qualifying adjectives without conjunctions: *Ех.* Свеаборгъ есть твердая, грозная, и неприступная крепость, Sveaborg is a *solid, imposing, and impregnable* fortress. But when one of the adjectives is a *possessive* or *circumstantial* adjective, the comma is not inserted: *Ех.* Вчерашний пріятный вечеръ, Yesterday's pleasant evening.

(9) Between commas are placed all the annexes of the subject and of the predicate, as also the subordinate and introductory propositions and words: *Ех.* Вашъ трудъ, кажется, приходитъ къ концу, Your labour, *it seems*, approaches the end.

Obs. 1.—Participles, gerunds, the pronouns *который*, *кой*, *какой*, *кто*, *что*, the adverbs *какъ-то*, *то-есть*, *напримѣръ*, *крѣмъ*, and the conjunctions *что*, *бѣдѣ*, *если*, *то*, *нежели-чѣмъ*, *крѣмъ*, *какъ*, require a comma to be placed before them, as also words which separate the subordinate from the main proposition. If, however, a participle is employed as an adjective, and a gerund as an adverb, a comma is not inserted: *Ех.* Человѣкъ *трудящійся* не знаетъ скуки, The man *who labours* does not know dullness; Онъ читаетъ *стоя*, He reads (whilst) *standing*.

Obs. 2.—The *subject*, the *predicate*, and the *copula*, are not separated by signs of punctuation: *Ех.* Альпы покрыты снѣгомъ, The Alps (are) covered with snow, &c. Neither are definitions or complements divided from their principal parts: *Ех.* Вершины многихъ Альпійскихъ горъ покрыты вѣчнымъ снѣгомъ и льдомъ, The summits of many Alpine mountains (are) covered with perpetual snow and ice.

(10) The adverbs во-первыхъ, во-вторыхъ, &c., and the conjunction наконецъ, are separated by commas: *Ex.* Во-первыхъ, вы издержите тутъ много денегъ, а во-вторыхъ, потеряете много времени, *Firstly* you there spend much money, and *secondly* you lose much time; *Наконецъ*, онъ рѣшился ѣхать въ деревню, *At last* he decided to ride to the village.

(11) If nouns in the vocative case are found in the middle of a sentence, they are separated by commas: *Ex.* Къ вамъ, мѣлостивый госудѣрь, обращаюсь съ просьбою, To you, *dear sir*, I turn with a request. But when a sentence begins or ends with a noun in the vocative case, after that noun notes of admiration will be put: *Ex.* Мѣлостивый Госудѣрь! позвольте обратѣться къ вамъ, &c., *Dear sir!* allow me to turn towards you, &c.

§ 195. A *semicolon* divides one proposition from another:—

(1) When its several parts have been already separated by commas: *Ex.* Толпы жителей бѣжали изъ огня, полки русскіе шли въ огонь; одни спасали жизнь, другіе несли еѣ на жертву,—Crowds of inhabitants fled from the fire, Russian regiments went into it; some saved their lives, others sacrificed them.

(2) In abrupt speech, when the main propositions are expressed briefly, and do not depend on each other: *Ex.* Продолговатыми островами разбросаны небольшія рощи; отъ деревни до деревни бѣгутъ узкія дорожки; церкви бѣлы,—In (shape like) oblong islands are scattered small groves; from village to village run narrow paths; the churches look white.

§ 196. A *colon* is placed—

(1) In the middle of the proposition, before the explanation of any of the parts or appellations: *Ex.* Человѣкъ имѣетъ пять внѣшнихъ чувствъ: зрѣніе, слухъ, вкусъ, обонаніе и осязаніе,—Man has five exterior senses: sight, hearing, taste, scent and touch; &c.

(2) Before quoted or foreign words: *Ex.* Русская пословица говоритъ: “ученье свѣтъ а неученье тьма,”—A Russian proverb says: “learning (is) light, and ignorance (is) darkness.”

(3) Before a subordinate proposition, when it comprises in itself the explanation of the causes or results of the action, expressed in the main proposition, and when with this may be placed the conjunction потому-что: *Ex.* Онъ убѣдился въ невозможности жить въ

столицѣ : доходы его уменьшались, а расходы увеличивались,—He convinced himself of the impossibility of living in the capital : his income decreased, and his expenditure increased. This sentence can be thus expressed : *потому-что* доходы его уменьшались, &c.

§ 197. The *full-stop* is placed—

(1) At the end of the sentence or proposition which comprises in itself complete meaning. (See *Ex.* § 175.)

(2) After separate words not possessed of any grammatical bond. For example, the table of contents of books, or circulars : О правах вообще, about rights generally, &c.

(3) With shortened words : *Ex.* Ив. Гончаровъ, Iván Gontchároff, &c.

§ 198. *Points of suspension* are inserted to mark some unexpected interruption of speech : *Ex.* Какое-то предчувствие меня устрашаетъ но, нѣтъ, это мечта ! Some sort of presentiment distresses me but, no, it is a dream !

§ 199. A *note of interrogation* is placed after a question : Кто пришёлъ ? Who has come ? &c.

§ 200. A *note of admiration* is placed wherever a wish, command, prohibition, are indicated, and also after interjections : *Ex.* Исполни скорѣй ! Смирно ! Do (it) quickly ! Silence ! Intense surprise is sometimes indicated by a double note of admiration (!!), and strong doubt by a double note of interrogation (??).

§ 201. A *hyphen* is placed—

(1) Whenever any word has been omitted : *Ex.* Законъ мой— правда, My law (is the) truth ; Богъ-мой щитъ, God (is) my shield.

(2) In the case of some unexpected change of speech : *Ex.* Солнце скрылось—и вдругъ, какъ будто бы изъ глубины ада, заревѣла бѣра—The sun was hid, and suddenly, as if from the depths of hell, began to roar *the tempest*.

(3) Between the speeches of two persons when they are not named : *Ex.* Чѣмъ ты занимаешься ? Читаю Исторію Карамзина.—Который томъ ? Двѣнадцатый. With what art thou occupied ? I am reading Karamzin's history.—Which volume ? The twelfth.

§ 202. Words or whole illustrative passages are placed within *parentheses*: *Ex.* Монбланъ (*бѣлая гора*) есть высочайшая изъ горъ въ Европѣ, *Mont Blanc (the white mountain)* is the highest mountain in Europe, &c.

§ 203. *Inverted commas* are placed in order to distinguish quoted or foreign words that are used in the sentence: *Ex.* Екатерина Вторая сказала: “Лучше простить десять виновныхъ чѣмъ наказать одного невиннаго.” Catherine II. said: “It is better to pardon ten criminals than to punish one innocent person.” &c.

THIRD PART.

(Отдѣленіе Шрѣтіе).

ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 204. Orthography treats of the regular use of words in writing.

§ 205. The chief rules of orthography consist in the proper use of letters and of separate words, and in the correct division of syllables.

§ 206. Letters, according to their delineation, are *capitals* (прописная) and *linear* (строчная).

USE OF CAPITALS.

§ 207. Capital letters are written—

- (1) At the beginning of each sentence.
- (2) After a full stop.

(3) After a colon when inverted commas appear in the proposition: *Ex.* Суворовъ отвѣчалъ: “Я знаю Кутузова, а Кутузовъ знаетъ меня;”—Soovóroff answered: “I know Kootóozoff, and Kootóozoff knows me.”

(4) After notes of interrogation and of admiration, if the meaning of the sentence is finished: *Ex.* Ты ищешь вѣрнаго

сча́стія? Dost thou seek true happiness? Идѣмъ на враго́въ! Let us go against the enemy!

(5) At the beginning of every verse.

(6) In nouns relating to the Divinity: *Ex.* Богъ, God; Создатель, Creator; Провидѣніе, Providence; &c.

(7) In the names of Saints: *Ex.* Апóстолъ, Apostle; Прорóкъ, Prophet; Предтѣча, Forerunner; &c.

(8) In Proper Names: *Ex.* Алексáндръ, Alexander; Мáрья, Mary; Лóндонъ, London; Днѣпръ, Dneiper; Везúвій, Vesuvius, &c.

(9) In adjectives employed as proper names: *Ex.* Россійская Имперія, Russian Empire; Чѣрное Мóре, Black Sea, &c.

(10) In various words used in the sense of proper nouns; such, for instance, as the names of ships, of streets, of bridges, &c.

(11) The name, patronymic, and title of the ruling Emperor, and of the whole of the most august House are written in full, in capital letters: *Ex.* ЕГО́ ИМПЕРА́ТОРСКОЕ ВЕЛІ́ЧЕСТВО ГОСУДА́РЬ ИМПЕРА́ТОРЪ АЛЕКСА́НДРЪ АЛЕКСА́НДРОВИЧЪ, His Imperial Majesty the Sovereign Emperor Alexander, Son of Alexander, &c. Likewise the adjectives which refer to the Sovereign: *Ex.* ВЫСОЧА́ЙШИЙ, Most High, &c.

Obs.—The initial letters only of the names and titles of foreign ruling personages are written with capital letters: *Ex.* ЕГО́ ИМПЕРА́ТОРСКОЕ и королѣвское Велі́чество ИМПЕРА́ТОРЪ Герма́нскій и Король Пру́сскій Вильгельмъ, His Imperial and Kingly Majesty the German Emperor and Prussian King William, &c.

(12) In pronouns relating to the person of the Emperor and of his House: *Ex.* ЕГО́ ВЕЛІ́ЧЕСТВО, во время пребыва́нія Своего́ въ Ца́рскомъ Селѣ́, повелѣ́лъ достáвить къ Немú отчёты, His Majesty, during his stay at the Royal village, ordered (them) to send reports to him, &c.

(13) In letters and business papers all titles—like князь, prince; графъ, count; баро́нъ, baron—ranks, names, and offices, when a person is indicated by such: *Ex.* Генера́ль Фельдма́ршалъ Князь Ба́рятинскій, General Field-Marshal Prince Baryátinski; Ка́нцлеръ Князь Горчако́въ, Chancellor Prince Gortchakóff, &c. In the same way when addressing persons of these ranks: *Ex.* Ва́ше

Сіятельство, Your Serene Highness; Его Превосходительство, His Excellency; Его Благородіе, His Honour; Его Преосвященство, His Eminence; and the complimentary designations used in writing: Милостивый Госудáръ и Господи́нъ, Dear Sir and Mister, &c. For the sake of politeness, pronouns which relate to the second person are put in capital letters: *Ех.* Я проси́лъ *Васъ* о доставлѣніи мнѣ Ва́шихъ пла́новъ, I asked *you* regarding the furnishing to me of *your* plans.

(14) The initial letters of adjectives relating to God and His Saints: *Ех.* Всевы́шій, Most High; Всеси́льный, Most Mighty; Преподо́бный, Reverend; &c.

(15) The initial letters of the designations of governments and tribunals: *Ех.* Госудáрственный Совѣтъ, State Council; Пра-вительствующій Сенáтъ, Executive Senate; Канцеля́рія Министѣрства Внутреннихъ Дѣлъ, Chancellory of the Ministry of Home Affairs; &c.

(16) The initial letters of the titles of scientific and educational institutions: *Ех.* Акаде́мія Нау́къ, Academy of Sciences; Минерало́гическое Общество, Mineralogical Society; Горный Институтъ, Mining Institute; &c.

Obs.—The rules in clauses 11, 12, 15 and 16 are observed in petitions and in business papers generally.

(17) In the initial letters of the titles of books: *Ех.* путеше́ствіе Вокру́гъ Свѣта, Travels Round the World; &c.

(18) In the initial letters of the names of festivals: *Ех.* Свѣтлое Воскресе́ніе, Easter Sunday; Благовѣ́щеніе, The Annunciation; Ро́ждество Христо́во, Christmas Day, *lit.* Birth of Christ.

(19) In the initial letters of the names of orders: *Ех.* Ордeнь подвѣзки, Order of the Garter; &c.

(20) In the initial letters of the characters in fables, &c.: *Ех.* Одна́жды Ле́бедь, Ра́къ, и Щу́ка, &c., Once upon a time a swan, a lobster, and a pike; &c.

USE OF SMALL LETTERS.

§ 208. Rules for the use of the letter *a*:—Nouns ending in *о*, *уо*, *уе*, and *ше*, have, in the nominative and accusative cases of the plural number, *a*: *Ех.* во́йска armies, окна windows, стекла glasses, лица persons, сердца hearts, учи́лища schools, зрѣ́лища spectacles—

not войски, окны, &c. The exception to this rule is яблоко apple, which makes яблоки. But all the diminutive nouns ending in *ко* and *це* have *и*, *ы*: *Ex.* зёрнышко grain, *plur.* зёрнышки, зёркальце mirror, зёркальцы.

§ 209. The letter *з* in the prepositions *воз*, *из*, *низ*, *раз*, before the letters *к*, *п*, *т*, *х*, *ц*, *ч*, *ш* and *щ*, is changed into *с*: *Ex.* восклицаніе exclamation, воспитанникъ pupil, истребить to destroy, исходъ exodus, исцѣленіе cure, исчезать to disappear, происшествіе occurrence, ущипать to pinch.

§ 210. The letter *и* is written before vowels and before the semi-vowel *й*: *Ex.* пріятное извѣстіе pleasant news, жаркій июль hot July, &c. Before a consonant the letter *и* is written in the word міръ universe, and in all words derived therefrom—*Ex.* мірской world, всемірный universally, Владіміръ Vladímír, &c.—in order to distinguish them from the word миръ, peace, and its derivatives. In foreign words adopted in the Russian language, after the letter *ц* is written *и*, and not *ы*: *Ex.* цѣфра cipher, медицина medicine, and not цыфра and медицины, although in such instances the pronunciation is the same.

§ 211. Although in the terminations of the diminutive and caressive nouns the form of the letter *е* is preserved, it is pronounced like *и*. Instead, therefore, of writing цвѣточекъ blossom, цвѣточекъ is written, &c.

§ 212. The double letter *сч* is found at the beginning of the following words only, and their derivatives: счастіе prosperity, счётъ account, счастливый fortunate, несчастный unfortunate, расчётъ calculation, считать to count, &c.

§ 213. Rules for the letter *ѣ*:—This letter is found at the beginning of two radical words only, viz. ѣхать (ѣздить) to ride or drive, ѣсть to eat. It occurs in the beginning or the middle of the following words and their derivatives:—

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>А. Апрѣль, April.</p> | <p>болѣзнь, disease. брѣю (from брить), I shave. бѣсъ, demon.</p> |
| <p>Б. бесѣда, conversation. бесѣдка, summer-house. блѣдный, pale.</p> | <p>бѣсѣть, to drive mad. бѣшенство, madness. бѣгать, to run. бѣда, woe. бѣдный, poor.</p> |

бѣдность, poverty.
бѣлый, white.
бѣльмо, cataract (in the eye).
бѣлуга, sturgeon.

В.

встрѣчать, to meet.
вѣдать, to know.
отвѣдать, to taste.
вѣдѣніе, knowledge.
вѣдомость, intelligence.
вѣдьма, witch.
вѣжливость, politeness.
вѣсть, news.
исповѣдь, &c., confession.
вѣжди, eyelids.
вѣко, eyelid.
вѣкъ, century.
вѣчный, eternal.
вѣчность, eternity.
Вѣна, Vienna.
вѣнѣцъ, crown.
вѣночекъ, wreath.
вѣникъ, broom.
вѣно, dowry.
вѣра, faith.
вѣрять, &c., to believe.
вѣсить, to weigh.
вѣсъ, weight.
вѣсы, scales.
вѣшать, to hang.
повѣсить, ditto.
завѣса, curtain.
навѣсъ, verandah.
вѣтвь, branch.
вѣтеръ, wind.
вѣщать, to announce.
извѣщать, &c., to inform.
навѣщать, &c., to visit.
вѣха, pole.
вѣять, to blow.
вѣеръ, fan.

Г.

Глѣбъ, proper name.
гнѣвъ, anger.
гнѣдой, bay (colour).
гнѣздѣ, nest.
горѣлки, a game.
грамотѣй, learned man.
грѣхъ, sin.

Д.

Днѣпръ, Dneiper.
Днѣстръ, Dneister.
доспѣхъ, armour.
дѣва, virgin.
дѣвать, to put.
одѣвать, to put on.
издѣваться, &c., to mock.
дѣдъ, grandfather.
дѣйствіе, action.
дѣло, business.
дѣланіе, act.
дѣлить, to divide.
опредѣлить, to define.
раздѣлить, &c., to separate.
дѣти, children.

Ж.

желѣза, glands.
желѣзо, iron.

З.

завѣса, curtain.
замѣчаніе, observation.
запавѣсъ, curtain.
заповѣдь, commandment.
застѣнчивость, shyness.
затмѣніе, eclipse.
затѣвать, to project.
звѣзда, star.
звѣрь, wild beast.
змѣй, serpent.
зрѣлый, ripe.
зѣвъ, mouth.
зѣвать, to yawn.
зѣніца, eyeball.

И

Индѣецъ, Indian.
Индѣйка, turkey.

К

калѣка, cripple.
кѣлье, room.
кѣлка, cage.
колѣно, knee.
крѣпкій, strong.

Л

лѣвый, left.

лѣкарь, healer.

лѣчить, to cure.

(These two words are sometimes spelt with *e* instead of *ѣ*, but the latter is more regular.)

лелѣять, to cuddle.

лѣнь, idleness.

лѣпить, to plaster.

лелѣпный, absurd.

великолѣпный, magnificent.

лѣсъ, forest.

лѣшій, forest imp.

лѣзть, to climb.

лѣстница, staircase.

лѣто, summer.

М

медвѣдь, bear (from мѣдѣть, to know, and мѣдъ, honey).

мѣдь, copper.

мѣлъ, chalk.

мѣна, exchange.

перемѣна, alteration.

измѣна, &c., treason.

мѣра, measure.

лицемѣріе, hypocrisy.

умѣренность, &c., moderation.

мѣсить, to knead.

мѣсто, place.

вмѣщать, to insert.

намѣстникъ, viceroy.

мѣсяцъ, month, or moon.

мѣтить, to mark.

замѣтить, to remark.

отмѣтить, to make a mark.

мѣхъ, fur.

мѣшать, to mix.

смѣсь, mixture.

мѣшать, to impede.

помѣшательство, folly.

помѣха, &c., obstacle.

мѣшокъ, sack.

мѣщанинъ, burgess.

Н

надѣяться, to hope.

намѣреніе, intention.

наслѣдство, inheritance.

наслѣдское, insert.

невѣста, bride.

невѣстка, daughter-in-law,
or sister-in-law.

недѣля, week.

нѣга, indulgence.

нѣдро, womb.

нѣжный, tender.

Нѣмапъ, proper name.

нѣмецъ, German.

нѣмой, dumb.

нѣтъ, no, not.

О

обрѣтать, to find.

изобрѣтать, to invent.

приобрѣтать, to acquire.

обѣдъ, dinner.

обѣдня, mass.

обѣтъ, vow.

обѣщаніе, promise.

орѣхъ, nut.

отвѣтъ, answer.

П

плѣнь, captivity.

плѣсень, mildew.

плѣшивый, bald.

побѣда, victory.

повѣтъ, district.

полѣно, log of wood.

понедѣльникъ, Monday.

посѣщать, to visit.

привѣтливость, affability.

примѣръ, example.

прѣсный, sweet (not salt).

пѣгій, piebald.

пѣна, froth.

пѣня, punishment.

пѣныязъ, denarius (a coin).

пѣснь, song.

пѣтухъ, cock.

пѣхота, infantry.

пѣшій, pedestrian.

пѣшка, pawn (in chess).

Р

рѣдкій, rare.

рѣдка, radish.
 рѣзать, to cut.
 прорѣха, slit.
 рѣзвый, playful.
 рѣзнóй, carved.
 рѣка, river.
 рѣпа, turnip.
 рѣсница, eyelid.
 рѣчь, speech.
 нарѣчіе, dialect.
 рѣшѣть, to decide.
 рѣшетó, sieve.
 рѣшетка, grating.
 рѣять, to pour forth.

С

свирѣль, reed, pipe.
 свирѣщій, ferocious.
 свѣжій, fresh.
 свѣтъ, light.
 свѣтитъ, to illuminate.
 свѣча, candle.
 просвѣщеніе, &c., enlightenment.
 слѣдъ, track.
 слѣдовать, to follow.
 послѣдній, &c., last.
 слѣпóй, blind.
 смѣхъ, laughter.
 смѣяться, to laugh.
 смѣшпóй, &c., laughable.
 смѣта, estimate.
 снѣгъ, snow.
 совѣсть, conscience.
 совѣтъ, advice.
 сомнѣніе, doubt.
 сосѣдъ, neighbour.
 спѣшить, to hasten.
 стрѣла, arrow.
 стѣна, wall.
 сѣверъ, north.
 сѣдло, saddle.
 сѣсть, to sit.
 сѣдина, greyness (of hair).
 сѣмя, seed.
 сѣни, vestibule.
 сѣнь, cover.
 осѣнѣть, to shade.
 сѣно, hay.
 сѣра, sulphur.

сѣрый, grey.
 сѣтовать, to lament.
 сѣтъ, net.
 сѣчь, to flog.
 сѣять, to sow.

Т

телѣга, cart.
 тѣло, body.
 тѣнь, shade.
 тѣсный, narrow.
 стѣснѣть, &c., to crowd.
 тѣсто, dough.
 тѣшить, to amuse.
 утѣха, amusement.

У

убѣждать, to convince.
 уѣздъ, district.

Х

хлѣбъ, bread.
 хлѣвъ, sty (for animals).
 хрѣнъ, horse-radish.

Ц

цвѣтъ, flower.
 цвѣстѣ, to blossom.
 цѣвница, flute.
 цѣдить, to draw off.
 цѣлѣть, to heal.
 исцѣлять, &c., to cure.
 цѣль, mark.
 цѣлить, to aim.
 цѣловать, to kiss.
 цѣлый, whole.
 цѣна, price.
 цѣпь, chain.
 цѣпкій, clinging.
 цѣпляться, &c., to cling to.
 цѣпенѣть, to grow stiff.
 цѣпь, flail.

Ч

человѣкъ, man.

Words which have the letter *н* retain it in all compound and derivative words : *Ех.* вѣра, faith ; вѣрю, I believe ; вѣрю, I trust ; вѣрный, faithful ; вѣрность, fidelity ; увѣрѣніе, assurance ; увѣренность, confidence ; повѣренный, agent ; вѣроятіе, probability ; достовѣрный, authentic ; легковѣрный, credulous ; суевѣріе, superstition ; &c. Two words only do not follow this rule, viz. надѣяться, to hope, and одѣвать, to dress ; from which come надежда, hope ; and одѣжда, clothing.

The letter *н* is written in the syllable *нѣ*, which is prefixed to pronouns and adverbs : *Ех.* нѣкто, нѣчто, нѣкоторый, нѣсколько, нѣкогда ; but the word некогда, want of leisure, is written with *е*.

In the following instances the letter *н* appears at the end and in the middle of words ;—

(1) In the *dative* and *prepositional* cases of nouns substantive terminating in *а* and *я* : *Ех.* Слугѣ, to a servant ; о судѣ, about a judge. Excepting those nouns which end in *ія* : *Ех.* Россія, which has Россіи and о Россіи, &c.

(2) In the *prepositional* case of nouns which end in *ѣ*, *ѣ* and *ѣ* of the masculine gender : *Ех.* въ покоѣ, in peace ; при столѣ, at a table ; въ огнѣ, in the fire. Also in the prepositional case of nouns which end in *о* and *е* : *Ех.* на окнѣ, on the window ; въ полѣ, in the field, but those ending in *іе* take *и* ; thus, въ имѣніи, in possession ; о рѣшеніи, about the decision.

(3) In the *comparative* and *superlative* degrees which terminate in *нѣ* and *нѣшій* : *Ех.* свѣтлѣе, свѣтлѣйшій.

(4) In the *numerals* однѣ, двѣ, обѣ, двѣнадцать, двѣсти. In the first and third of these examples the letter *н* appears in all the cases.

(5) In the *dative* and *prepositional* cases of the pronouns я, ты, себѣ ; thus, мнѣ, тебѣ, о себѣ.

(6) In the *instrumental* case, singular number, of the pronouns кто, что, тотъ, весь ; thus, кѣмъ, чѣмъ, тѣмъ, всѣмъ.

(7) In *all the cases* of the plural number of the pronouns тотъ and весь.

(8) In the *nominative* case, plural, of the fem. form of the pronoun of the third person : онѣ, онѣ.

(9) In verbs, the first person of the present tense of which ends in *нѣ*, the letter *н* occurs in all the tenses and moods, except of брѣтъ,

to shave: *Ех.* смѣть, to dare, смѣю, смѣль, смѣй. And likewise in all words derived from these verbs: *Ех.* смѣлость, смѣлый, смѣльчакъ, daring, bold, bold fellow, &c.

(10) Except the three verbs, умерѣть to die, терѣть to rub, перѣть to push; and its derivatives, заперѣть to lock, отперѣть to unlock, all have *н* instead of *е* before the termination *ть* of the infinitive mood: *Ех.* смотре*н*ть, хоте*н*ть, видѣ*н*ть. These verbs have also *н* before the terminations *лъ* of the past tense, indicative mood: *Ех.* смотре*н*лъ, хоте*н*лъ, видѣ*н*лъ. The participles and gerunds, and also all words derived from these verbs, likewise maintain the letter *н*: *Ех.* Видѣвшій, увидѣвъ, видѣніе, привидѣніе, провидѣніе.

(11) In the adverbs вездѣ, вѣль, гдѣ, докѣль, дотѣль, здѣсь, крѣмъ, нынѣ, отсѣль, подѣль, вполнѣ, възѣль, вправѣль, влѣвъ, вскорѣль, накупѣль, наединѣ, послѣ. Likewise in nouns adjective formed from these adverbs: *Ех.* вѣншній, здѣшній, нынѣшній, &c.

The letter *н* also appears before *и* in the terminations of the following nouns—Авдѣи, Алексѣи, Сергѣи, Матѣи, грамотѣи, and in the derivatives of the verbs дѣлать and дѣйствовать, such as злѣдѣи, чарѣдѣи.

§ 214. The letter *н* is not written in the following cases:—

(1) In the middle of words, after the letters г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ, except in the case of the two pronouns кѣмъ and чѣмъ.

(2) When the letter *е* is pronounced like *ѣ* (*йе* or *о*): *Ех.* лёдъ, мѣдъ, шѣль, плѣль. Exceptions:—*Substantives*: гнѣзда, звѣзды, сѣдла. *Verbs*: обрѣль, and цвѣль, and their compounds приобрѣль, изобрѣль, расцвѣль.

(3) In the designations of races, terminating in *не*: *Ех.* Славяне, Slavs; Россіяне, Russians; Армяне, Armenians; &c.

(4) In foreign words received into the Russian language;—except Апрѣль, April; Вѣна, Vienna; and their derivatives.

Obs.—In order to avoid mistakes in the use of *н* in words wherein the letter *е* also occurs, it should be observed that *н* represents the sound on which rests the accent: *Ех.* лелѣять, to fondle; телѣга, cart; сѣверъ, north; Пѣмецъ, German; желѣзо, iron; перемѣна, change; &c.

§ 215. The Greek letter *ѳ* appears only in the beginning of the following Russian words: ѳѣ! ѳотѣ, ѳхъ! ѳкой, ѳтакъ, ѳтакой, and

in the beginning and middle of foreign words introduced into the Russian language: *Ех.* *ѣхо*, *ѡкваторъ*, *ѡкзáменъ*, *ѡтáжъ*, *по́йма*, *по́ить*, &c.

§ 216. The letter *ѳ*, in pronunciation like *ф*, appears in words introduced into Russian from the Greek: (*Ex.* Αθήναι Athens, Θερμοπύλαι Thermopylæ, &c.), and also in words taken from the Latin or the French. In such it stands for *th*: *Ex.* Ἑσθήρ Esther, Θεόδωρ Théodor, Θωμά Thomas, &c.

§ 217. The letters *ѣ* and *ѵ* mark the distinction in the pronunciation of those words ending either in the one or the other. The former gives a hard articulation: *Ex.* столѣ table, столѣ pole, матѣ mate; but the letter *ѵ* gives a soft utterance: *Ex.* столѵ so much, so many, шестьѵ six, матѵ mother. The semi-vowels *ѣ* and *ѵ* after the sibilant letters ж, ч, ш, щ, mark no kind of distinction in pronunciation: *Ex.* ножѣ knife, рожѣ rye, мечѣ sword, течѣ to flow, камышѣ reed, мышѣ mouse. In such cases it must be observed that all nouns of the masculine gender take *ѣ* after the sibilant letters above enumerated: *Ex.* рубѣжѣ border, лучѣ ray, ключѣ key, врачѣ doctor, шалашѣ hut, плащѣ cloak, плющѣ ivy, &c. The same remark applies to the patronymic nouns: *Ex.* Ивановичѣ, Михайловичѣ, Петровичѣ, &c. But nouns of the feminine gender terminate in *ѵ*: *Ex.* рожѵ rye, ночьѵ night, пустошѵ waste ground, помощѵ aid. After the *и* in the middle of a word, *ѵ* is not written: *Ex.* дочка daughter, точка point, stop, печька oven, птичка bird, &c.

§ 218. The letter *ѣ* occurs in the genitive case, plural, of nouns ending in *a*, *o*, and *ше*: *Ex.* слугá слугѣ, окнó окнѣ, учѣлище учѣлищѣ; likewise in the same case and number of the following words:—ты́сяча тысячѣ, сáжень сажѣнѣ; and in certain cases, singular and plural, of the masculine and neuter forms of the pronouns нашѣ and вашѣ.

§ 219. The letter *b* occurs—

(1) In the infinitive mood of active and neuter verbs: *Ex.* смотре́ть, бѣга́ть. Likewise before the suffix *ся* in reflexive, reciprocal, and common verbs: *Ex.* хвали́ться, спра́жаться, надѣ́яться.

(2) (a) In the 2nd person singular of the present and future tenses, indicative mood, of active and neuter verbs: *Ex.* видишь, поощраешь;—(b) in the 1st and 2nd person singular, and 2nd person,

plural, of the present and future tenses of reflective, reciprocal, and common verbs: *Ех. хвалю́сь, хва́лишься, хва́литесь, &c.*

(3) In the 2nd person of both numbers of the imperative mood: *Ех. оста́вь, оста́вьте, &c.* Exception: perfect aspect of the verb *ложиться, лягъ*, which in the 2nd person plural of the imperative mood makes *лягте*.

(4) Words taken from foreign languages, after the letter *л* have *ь*: *Ех. Альпы* the Alps, *альтъ* (musical term *alto*), *брилья́нтъ* brilliant, &c.

PROPER USE OF SEPARATE WORDS.

§ 220. The negative adverb *не* is written separately—

(1) Before possessive and circumstantial adjectives: *Ех. не ру́сскій, не золо́тѡй, не здѣ́шній, не вчераш́ній, &c.*

(2) Before numerals: *Ех. не оди́нъ, не впе́рвый, &c.*

(3) Before the pronouns: *Ех. не онъ, не нашъ, не тотъ, &c.*

(4) Before verbs and adverbs: *Ех. не ви́жу, не жела́мъ, не ви́дя, не жела́я, &c.*

§ 221. The negative adverb *не* is written conjointly—

(1) With nouns adjective, and adverbs of quality: *Ех. небога́тый* poor, *невесё́лый* sad, *небога́то* poorly, *невёсело* sadly.

Obs.—If adverse conjunctions precede adjectives or adverbs of quality, the negative adverb *не* is written separately: *Ех. не бога́тый но сы́тнѡй обѣ́дъ, not* a rich, but a copious dinner; *оно́ хотя не ве́село но поле́зно, although (it is) not* cheerful, yet (it is) useful.

(2) With participles: *Ех. незави́сѡщій* independent, *недви́жимѡй* immoveable, &c.

(3) The negative adverb *не* is written conjointly with words which either have no signification of their own, as *не́дугъ* sickness, *нелюди́мъ* misanthrope, *нечестѡ́вый* impious, *не́нависть* hatred, *нена́стье* bad weather;—or else an altogether different meaning, as *неизрѣ́чѡнный* unutterable, *непра́вда* untruth, it is not true, *неприя́тель* enemy, *непоко́рнось* disobedience.

§ 222. The particle *ни* is written conjointly only with the following words: *никто́, никако́й, нигде́, никуда́, ника́къ, никогда́*. In all other instances it is written separately: *Ех. ни ско́лько, ни ма́ло: онъ не уме́етъ ни чита́тъ ни писа́тъ, he can neither read nor write.*

§ 223. When the prepositions *за, по, на, изъ, съ, въ* are joined with other parts of speech, and thus form adverbs or conjunctions, they are written conjointly with the word to which they are joined: *Ех. зачѣмъ, затѣмъ, потому, поутру, напримѣръ, наканунѣ*, the day before; *изъстари*, of old; *сначала, снизу, сверху, снизу, сверху, справа, впрочемъ, наконецъ, &c.* But if these prepositions do not form adverbs or conjunctions, and govern some one case or another, then they are written separately: *Ех. За тѣмъ садомъ нашъ домъ*, Our house (is) behind that garden; *Пойду по тому берегу*, I will go along that bank; *Смотри на примѣръ добрыхъ товарищей*, Look to the example of good companions; *Онъ уѣхалъ со всѣмъ своимъ семействомъ*, He went away with his whole family; &c.

§ 224. The conditional conjunction, *бы (бѣ)* is only joined in the two following instances: *чтобы, дабы*. In all others it is written separately: *Ех. Я пришёлъ бы къ вамъ, если бы имѣлъ время*, I would have come to you if I had had time.

§ 225. The copulative conjunction *же (жѣ)* before various parts of speech is written separately: *Ех. тотъ же, однако же, что жѣ, иди жѣ, смотри жѣ*. It is also written separately in the comparative conjunction такъ же: *Ех. Римляне были такъ же славны, какъ и греки*, The Romans were as famous as the Greeks. But in the case of the copulative conjunction также it is not separated: *Ех. Я также былъ въ Петербургѣ*, I was also at Peterhoff. The word тоже, when it implies uniformity, is written conjointly: *Ех. Я тоже пойду*, I likewise will go. But when it is used as a pronoun it is written separately: *Ех. Онъ то же отвѣчалъ мнѣ что и вамъ*, He answered me the same as he did you.

COPULATIVES.

§ 226. A hyphen is called a *copulative* (знакъ соединительный), and it may serve to connect two or more separate words: *Ех. Генераль-адъютантъ*, General Aide-de-camp; *физико-математическій*, physico-mathematical.

§ 227. Copulatives may connect—

(1) Two nouns substantive: *Ех. Генераль-фельдмаршалъ, штабъ-офицеръ*, General Field-Marshal, superior officer, &c.

(2) Two adjectives: *Ех. Сѣверо-Американскіе Штаты*, North-American States. Likewise adjectives with substantives: *Ех. Нижне-Камчатскъ*, Lower Kamtchatsa, &c.

(3) Numerals with adjectives: *Ex.* трёх-угольный, triangular, &c.

(4) Prepositions with various parts of speech, *i. e.* when such a union forms an adverb: по-ру́ски, in Russian; по-бра́тски, after the manner of brothers; по-мо́ему, in my way; во-вторы́хъ, secondly, &c.

(5) Compound prepositions, such as изъ-за, изъ-подъ, &c.

(6) The conjunctions то, ли́бо, with various parts of speech: *Ex.* кто-то, какой-то, гдѣ-то, кто-ли́бо, когда-ли́бо.

§ 228. Copulatives, or hyphens, serve also to connect words which are disjointed by being carried on from one line to another, and of this mention is made below.

DISJOINTING OF WORDS.

§ 229. In carrying on words from one line to another, the following rules should be observed:—

(1) To carry on regular syllables: *Ex.* бла-го-ра-зу́м-ный че-ло-вѣ́къ, discreet man.

(2) In compound words, or those made up with other parts of speech, to disjoint their component parts: *Ex.* Царь-градъ, Новгородъ, вос-ходъ, море-ходъ, отъ-ѣздъ, &c.

(3) Words of one syllable cannot be carried on from one line to another: *Ex.* гро-мъ (громъ), стра-сть (страсть), вол-къ (волкъ), цар-ствъ (царствъ).

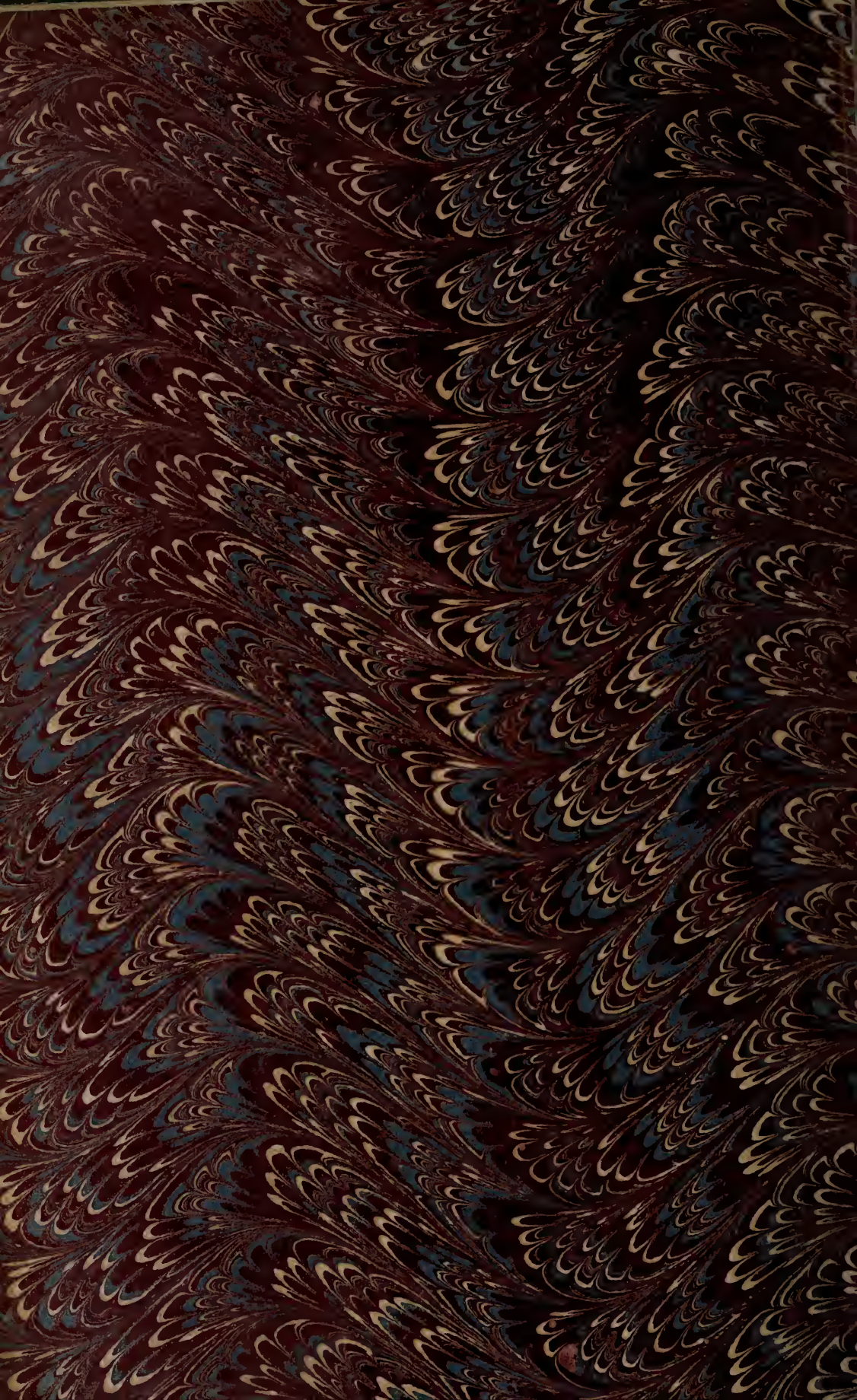
(4) One letter only of polysyllabic words cannot be transferred to another line: *Ex.* армі-я, лилі-ю.

CONTRACTION OF WORDS.

§ 230. Contracted words must end ordinarily in a consonant: *Ex.* і́мя прил. (прилагáтельное), муж. род., множ. числ., дат. пад.

§ 231. The following comprise the more commonly used contractions:—г. (господи́нь), г-жа (госпожа́), м. г. (ми́лостивый госуда́рь), напр. (напримѣ́ръ), т. е. (то е́сть), и проч. (и про́чее), и. т. д. (и такъ да́лѣе), и. т. п. (и то́му подóбное), с. п. б. (Санктпете́рбуръ), по Р. Х. (по Рожде́ствѣ Христо́вомъ), отъ С. М. (отъ Сотворе́нія Ми́ра), вм. (вмѣ́сто).





UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
LIBRARY

Do not
remove
the card
from this
Pocket.

Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File."
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU, Boston

LaR.Gr
I935r
.Eg

Ivanov, Aleksandr
Russian Grammar

26419

